

## Laminar free hyperbolic 3-manifolds

Sérgio R. Fenley\*

**Mathematics Subject Classification (2000).** Primary 20E08, 37E25, 58D19; Secondary 05C05, 57M60.

**Keywords.** Essential laminations, foliations, pseudo-Anosov flows, hyperbolic 3-manifolds, Dehn surgery, bundles over the torus.

### 1. Introduction

We analyse the existence question for essential laminations in 3-manifolds. The purpose of the article is to prove that there are infinitely many closed hyperbolic 3-manifolds which do not admit essential laminations. This gives a definitive negative answer to a fundamental question posed by Gabai and Oertel when they introduced essential laminations in [Ga-Oe], see also [Ga4], [Ga5]. The proof is obtained by analysing certain group actions on trees and showing that certain 3-manifold groups only have trivial actions on trees. There are corollaries concerning the existence question for Reebless foliations and pseudo-Anosov flows.

This article deals with the topological structure of 3-manifolds. Two dimensional manifolds are extremely well behaved in the sense that the universal cover is always either the plane or the sphere (for closed manifolds), the fundamental group determines the manifold and many other important properties. Similarly for a 3-manifold one asks: When is the universal cover  $\mathbb{R}^3$ ? When does the fundamental group determine the manifold? Are homotopic homeomorphisms always isotopic? An obvious necessary condition is that the manifold be *irreducible*, that is, every embedded sphere bounds a ball. As for 2-manifolds, the existence of a compact codimension one object which is topologically good is extremely useful. A properly embedded 2-sided surface not  $\mathbb{S}^2$ ,  $\mathbb{D}^2$  is *incompressible* if it injects in the fundamental group level [He]. A compact, irreducible manifold with an incompressible surface is called *Haken*. Fundamental work of Haken [Hak1], [Hak2] and Waldhausen [Wa] shows that Haken manifolds have fantastic properties, answering in the positive the 3 questions above.

But how common are Haken 3-manifolds, that is, how common are incompressible surfaces amongst irreducible 3-manifolds? In some sense they are not very common.

---

\*Research partially supported by NSF grants DMS-0296139 and DMS-0305313.

Recall that *Dehn surgery* along an orientation preserving simple closed curve  $\delta$  is the process of removing a tubular neighborhood  $N(\delta)$  (a solid torus) and gluing back by a homeomorphism of the boundary – which is a two dimensional torus  $T_1$  [Rol], [Bu-Zi]. The surgered manifold is completely determined by which simple closed curve in  $T_1$  becomes the new *meridian*, that is, which curve of  $T_1$  is glued to the null homotopic curve in the boundary of  $N(\delta)$ . Hence this is parametrized by a pair of relatively prime integers  $(q, p)$ , corresponding to the description of simple closed curves in  $T_1$ . When viewed this way, the set of relatively prime  $(q, p)$  is the *Dehn surgery space* – a subset of  $\mathbb{Z}^2 \subset \mathbb{R}^2$ . The same can be done iterating the process doing Dehn surgery on links [He], [Rol], [Bu-Zi]. Notice that all closed, orientable 3-manifolds can be obtained from  $\mathbb{S}^3$  by some Dehn surgery on an appropriate link in  $\mathbb{S}^3$  [Rol]. So one can interpret how common a property is by verifying how many of the Dehn surgered manifolds have that property. Along these lines some of the many results on incompressible surfaces are: If  $K$  is a two bridge knot in  $\mathbb{S}^3$  then almost all Dehn surgeries on  $K$  yield manifolds without incompressible surfaces [Ha-Th]. The same is true for any knot  $K$  in a manifold  $M$  so that  $M - K$  does not have any closed incompressible surfaces [Hat1]. Notice that there are also results on the other direction: for example Oertel [Oe] proved that for many star links in  $\mathbb{S}^3$ , then any non trivial Dehn surgery yields a manifold with incompressible surfaces. There are similar results for Montesinos knots [Ha-Oe]. Basically a lot of it depends on whether the complement has closed incompressible surfaces or not. In many cases the complement does not have such surfaces, yielding the non existence results for most Dehn surgered manifolds.

This amongst other reasons led to the concept of an essential lamination as introduced by Gabai and Oertel in the seminal paper [Ga-Oe] of the late 80s. A *lamination* is a foliation of a closed subset of the manifold. Roughly a lamination in a closed 3-manifold is *essential* if it has no sphere leaves, no tori leaves bounding solid tori, the complement of the lamination is irreducible and the leaves in the boundary of the complement are incompressible and end incompressible in their respective complementary components [Ga-Oe]. Gabai and Oertel proved the fundamental result that essential laminations have far reaching and deep consequences: the manifold  $M$  is irreducible, its universal cover is  $\mathbb{R}^3$ , leaves of the lamination inject in the fundamental group level, efficient closed transversals are not null homotopic; and there are other consequences [Ga-Ka3]. In addition manifolds with *genuine* essential laminations satisfy the weak hyperbolization conjecture [Ga-Ka4]: either there is a  $\mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z}$  subgroup of the fundamental group or the fundamental group is Gromov hyperbolic [Gr], [Gh-Ha]. Genuine means that not all complementary regions are  $I$ -bundles, or equivalently it is not just a blow up of a foliation. Brittenham also proved properties concerning homotopy equivalences for manifolds with essential laminations [Br2].

In addition essential laminations are extremely common: For example if  $K$  is a non trivial knot in  $\mathbb{S}^3$  then off of at most two lines and a couple of points in Dehn surgery

space, the surgered manifold contains an essential lamination. This is obtained as follows: first Gabai constructed a Reebless foliation  $\mathcal{F}$  in  $(\mathbb{S}^3 - N(K))$  which is transverse to the boundary [Ga1], [Ga2], [Ga3]. Reebless means it does not have a Reeb component: a foliation of the solid torus with the boundary being a leaf, all other leaves are planes spiralling to the boundary [Re], [No]. Then results of Mosher, Gabai [Mo2] show that either there is an incompressible torus transverse to  $\mathcal{F}$  or there is an essential lamination in  $\mathbb{S}^3 - N(K)$  with solid torus complementary regions. This lamination remains essential off of at most two lines in Dehn surgery space [Mo2] – see more on solid torus complementary regions later. Also Brittenham produced examples of essential laminations which remain essential after all non trivial Dehn surgeries [Br3], [Br4]. Roberts has also obtained many important existence results concerning alternating knots in the sphere [Ro1], [De-Ro] (partly jointly with Delman) and punctured surface bundles [Ro2], [Ro3].

So successful was the search for essential laminations that at first one might wonder whether all manifolds that can (irreducible, with infinite fundamental group), in fact do admit essential laminations. Given that an incompressible torus is an essential lamination, the Geometrization conjecture [Th2] suggests that one should only have to analyse Seifert fibered spaces and hyperbolic manifolds [Sc], [Th2]. The Geometrization conjecture may well have been proved at this point: after this article was written Perelman announced a proof of this conjecture [Pe1], [Pe2] – this is being very carefully scrutinized by the experts at this point.

The situation for Seifert fibered spaces has been completely resolved: Brittenham produced examples of Seifert fibered spaces which are irreducible, have infinite fundamental group, universal cover  $\mathbb{R}^3$ , but which do not have essential laminations [Br1]. Naimi [Na], using work of Bieri, Neumann and Strebel [BNS], completely determined which Seifert fibered manifolds admit essential laminations.

For hyperbolic 3-manifolds there were two fundamental open questions:

- 1) (Thurston) Does every closed hyperbolic 3-manifold admit a Reebless foliation?
- 2) (Gabai-Oertel [Ga-Oe], see also [Ga4], [Ga5]) Does every closed hyperbolic 3-manifold admit an essential lamination?

In 2001 question 1) was answered in the negative by Roberts, Shareshian and Stein [RSS] who produced infinitely many counterexamples. The goal of this article is to answer question 2) in the negative. We now proceed to describe the examples.

Basically one starts with a torus bundle  $M$  over the circle and then performs Dehn surgery on a particular closed curve. Let  $\phi$  be the monodromy of the fibration associated to a 2 by 2 integer matrix  $A$ , so that  $A$  is hyperbolic. Let  $R$  be a fiber which is a torus. There are two foliations in  $R$  which are invariant under the monodromy  $\phi$ , the stable and unstable foliations. The suspension flow in  $M$  induces two foliations in  $M$  with leaves being planes, annuli and Möbius bands. Suppose there is a Möbius band leaf. Blow up that leaf, producing a lamination  $\lambda$  with a solid torus complementary component with closure a solid torus with core  $\delta$  and with some curves  $\eta$  removed from

the boundary. The curves  $\eta$  are called the *degeneracy locus* of the complementary region of the lamination [Ga-Ka1]. One can think of  $\eta$  as lying in the boundary of  $N(\delta)$ , which is a two dimensional torus. Let  $(1, 0)$  be the curve in  $\partial N(\delta)$  which bounds the fiber in  $M - N(\delta)$ . Under an appropriate choice for the curve  $(0, 1)$  of  $\partial N(\delta)$  then  $\eta$  is represented by  $(1, 2)$ . Do Dehn surgery along  $\delta$ . If  $\xi$  is the new meridian (the Dehn surgery slope), then results of essential laminations [Ga-Oe], [Ga-Ka1] show that the lamination  $\lambda$  remains essential in the Dehn surgery manifold  $M_\xi$  if the intersection number of  $\xi$  and  $\eta$  is at least 2 in absolute value. If  $\xi$  is described as  $(q, p)$  then this is equivalent to  $|p - 2q| \geq 2$ . Therefore the open cases for essential laminations are  $|p - 2q| \leq 1$ .

For simplicity of notation we omit the explicit dependence of  $M$  on  $\phi$ . It is always understood that  $M$  depends on the particular  $\phi$ .

In a beautiful and fundamental result, Hatcher [Hat2], showed that if  $p < q$  then the Dehn surgery manifold  $M_\xi = M_{p/q}$  has a Reebless foliation. This is done via an explicit construction involving train tracks and branched surfaces. In 2001 Roberts, Shareshian and Stein considered a particular type of monodromy, namely generated by the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} m & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad m \leq -3.$$

The eigenvalues of  $A$  are negative. Consider the point  $(0, 0)$  in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  and its projection  $O$  to the fibering torus  $R$ . Let  $\delta$  be the closed orbit of the suspension flow through  $O$ . Because the eigenvalues are negative, the leaf of the stable foliation through  $O$  is a Möbius band. When it is blown open into an annulus the degeneracy locus is  $(1, 2)$  as described above. In a groundbreaking work, Roberts, Shareshian and Stein [RSS] considered Dehn surgery on these manifolds and proved a wonderful result: if  $p$  is odd,  $m$  is odd and  $p \geq q$  then  $M_{p/q}$  does not admit Reebless foliations. In this article we consider a subclass of these manifolds and prove that they do not admit essential laminations:

**Main Theorem.** *Let  $M$  be a torus bundle over the circle with monodromy induced by the matrix  $A$  above. Let  $\delta$  be the orbit of the suspension flow coming from the origin and  $M_{(q,p)} = M_{p/q}$  be the manifold obtained by  $(q, p)$  Dehn surgery on  $\delta$ . Here  $(1, 0)$  bounds the fiber in  $(M - N(\delta))$  and  $(1, 2)$  is the degeneracy locus. If  $m \leq -4$  and  $|p - 2q| = 1$ , then the manifold  $M_{p/q}$  does not admit essential laminations.*

The manifold  $(M - \delta)$  is atoroidal [Th4], [Bl-Ca] and fibers over the circle with fiber a punctured torus. By Thurston's hyperbolization theorem in the fibering case  $(M - \delta)$  has a complete hyperbolic structure of finite volume [Th3]. By Thurston's Dehn surgery theorem  $M_{p/q}$  is hyperbolic for almost all  $p/q$  [Th1]. Therefore:

**Corollary.** *There are infinitely many closed, hyperbolic 3-manifolds which do not admit essential laminations.*

Another immediate corollary is:

**Corollary.** *If  $m \leq -4$  and  $|p - 2q| = 1$ , then the manifolds  $M_{p/q}$  above do not admit Reebless foliations.*

About half of this result has already been established by Roberts, Shareshian and Stein [RSS], namely the situation when  $m$  is odd. See more on  $m$  odd later on. Another consequence is:

**Corollary.** *If  $m \leq -4$  and  $|p - 2q| = 1$  then  $M_{p/q}$  does not admit pseudo-Anosov flows.*

For basic definitions and properties of pseudo-Anosov flows consult [Mo1], [Mo2]. This result provides infinitely many hyperbolic manifolds without pseudo-Anosov flows. We stress that Calegari and Dunfield [Ca-Du] previously obtained conditions implying manifolds do not admit pseudo-Anosov flows and showed for example that the Weeks manifold does not admit pseudo-Anosov flows.

We remark that Dehn surgery on torus bundles over the circle has been widely studied, for example: a) Which surgered manifolds have incompressible surfaces [Fl-Ha], [CJR]; b) virtual homology [Bk1], [Bk2]; c) geometrization [Jo], [Th1], [Th2], [Th3], [Th4].

Finally we remark that there are algorithms to decide these existence questions. Namely Jaco and Oertel [Ja-Oe] produced an algorithm to decide whether a 3-manifold has an incompressible surface. Recently Agol and Li [Ag-Li] did the same for essential laminations. These are theoretical algorithms and so far for laminations there are no manifolds which can be shown not to have essential laminations using the algorithm.

The proof of the main theorem is as follows: assume there is an essential lamination in  $M_{p/q}$ . This produces a non trivial action of the fundamental group of  $M_{p/q}$  in a tree (see preliminaries section). We then show that there cannot be any such action.

We stress that the results in this article provide the first and so far the only known examples of hyperbolic manifolds without essential laminations of any kind.

The results of this article mean that the search for structures more general than essential laminations, but still useful takes an added relevance. One idea previously proposed by Gabai [Ga5] is that of a *loosesse lamination*. We will have more comments on that in the final remarks section.

The article is organized as follows: in the next section we describe how an essential lamination produces a non trivial group action on a tree. We also give background material on group actions on trees and produce an explicit presentation of the group which will be analysed: this is the fundamental group of the Dehn surgered punctured torus bundle. In Section 3 we present the outline of the proof of the main theorem. The proof is done by contradiction assuming there is a non trivial action of the group

on a tree. The analysis is done in a case by case analysis depending on how certain individual elements of the group may act on the tree. The outline is fairly explicit and presents clearly what is done in much more detail in Sections 4 through 7. Since the arguments in Sections 5, 6, and 7 are extremely involved, the outline also serves as a good reference source while one reads these later sections. In Section 4 we deal with the case that the tree is the real line. This is very simple, but even here some fundamental ideas come up. In Sections 5, 6 and 7 we analyse 3 cases of the proof depending on whether certain generators of the group act freely on the tree or not. In each case the arguments little by little produce a structure on the tree, which turns out to be incompatible with the action. These sections complete the proof of the main theorem. In the final section we mention recent activity in this area and also comment on open problems for future analysis.

We are very thankful to Rachel Roberts who introduced the idea of considering group actions in the foliations case and other ideas. We also thank the referee for very good suggestions concerning the organization of this article.

## 2. Preliminaries

The proof of the main theorem is done by looking at group actions on trees. For simplicity first consider the case of a Reebless foliation  $\mathcal{F}$  [No]. Novikov proved that leaves of a Reebless foliation are incompressible and transversals to the foliation are never homotopic rel endpoints into a leaf [No]. Hence the lift to the universal cover  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}$  is a foliation by planes or spheres and its leaf space is a simply connected 1-dimensional manifold, which may not be Hausdorff. The fundamental group of the manifold acts on this object. Roberts et al analysed group actions on simply connected non Hausdorff 1-manifolds (and also on trees) and they ruled out the existence of Reebless foliations [RSS] in a class of manifolds. Notice that the leaf space of the lifted foliation  $\tilde{\mathcal{F}}$  is an orientable object and it makes sense to talk about orientation preserving homeomorphisms.

Now consider essential laminations. Let  $\lambda$  be an essential lamination on a 3-manifold  $N$ . The results of Gabai and Oertel [Ga-Oe] imply that the lift  $\tilde{\lambda}$  to the universal cover is a lamination by planes in  $\tilde{N}$ . We will modify  $\lambda$  if necessary to eventually obtain a group action on a tree which is roughly the leaf space of the lifted lamination  $\tilde{\lambda}$ . First, if there are any leaves of  $\lambda$  which are isolated on both sides, then blow each of them into an  $I$ -bundle of leaves – this needs to be done at most countably many times. Now  $\tilde{\lambda}$  is a lamination by planes with no leaves isolated on both sides [Ga-Oe].

Suppose  $L$  is a leaf of  $\tilde{\lambda}$  which is *non separated* from another leaf  $F$ , that is, there are  $L_i$  leaves of  $\tilde{\lambda}$  with  $L_i$  converging to both  $L$  and  $F$ . We do not want that  $L$  is not separated from some other leaf in the other side (the one not containing  $F$ ).

If that happens, blow up  $L$  into an  $I$ -bundle of leaves. This can also be achieved by a blow up in  $\lambda$ . Since there are at most countably many leaves non separated from some other leaf, we can get rid of leaves non separated from leaves on both sides. If needed use blow ups so that non separated leaves of  $\tilde{\lambda}$  are not boundary leaves of a complementary region of  $\tilde{\lambda}$  (on the opposite side). After all these possible modifications assume this is the original lamination  $\lambda$ .

Now define a set  $T_*$  whose elements are: closures of complementary components of  $\tilde{\lambda}$  and also leaves of  $\tilde{\lambda}$  which are non isolated on both sides. Then  $T_*$  is an *order tree* [Ga-Ka2], [Ro-St2], also called a *non Hausdorff tree* [Fe]. The fundamental group  $\pi_1(N)$  naturally acts on  $T_*$ . We now modify  $T_*$  to produce an actual tree. If  $e$  is any point of  $T_*$  which is non separated from another point  $e'$ , then collapse all points non separated from  $e$  together with  $e$ . This is not problematic since no such  $e$  is non separated on more than one side and  $e$  also does not come from a complementary region of  $\tilde{\lambda}$ . The collapsed object is now an actual tree  $T$  and the action of  $\pi_1(N)$  on  $T_*$  induces a natural action of  $\pi_1(N)$  on  $T$ . In our proof we will let  $N$  be the Dehn surgery manifold  $M_{p/q}$  and we will analyse group actions of  $\mathcal{G} = \pi_1(M_{p/q})$  on an arbitrary tree  $T$ .

Since we will be looking at group actions on trees we now describe some basic material about actions on trees. First of all let us stress that the trees here are only *topological trees*. There is no well-defined metric in the tree which is invariant under the action. The arguments are entirely topological. The reader should be aware that the term tree in this article differs from some other sources – where a tree may mean a simplicial tree or an  $\mathbb{R}$ -tree (both of which are metric trees and actions preserve the metric).

**Notation.** In the arguments of this article, group elements act on the *right*.

**Definition 2.1.** A group action on a tree  $T$  is nontrivial if no point of  $T$  is fixed by all elements of the group.

A lot of results on group actions on trees are to rule out non trivial group actions [Cu-Vo].

Given point  $a, b$  on a tree  $T$  let

$$(a, b) = \{c \in T \mid c \text{ separates } a \text{ from } b\}.$$

If  $a = b$ , then  $(a, b)$  is empty, otherwise it is an open segment. Let  $[a, b]$  be the union of  $(a, b)$  and  $\{a, b\}$ . Then  $[a, b]$  is always a closed segment.

One fundamental concept here is the following:

**Definition 2.2 (bridge).** If  $x$  is a point of a tree  $T$  not contained in a connected set  $B$ , then there is a unique embedded path  $[x, y]$  from  $x$  to  $B$ . This path has  $(x, y) \cap B = \emptyset$

and either  $y$  is in  $B$  or  $y$  is an accumulation point of  $B$ . We say that  $[x, y]$  is the bridge from  $x$  to  $B$ . Also we say that  $x$  bridges to  $B$  in  $y$  or that  $x$  bridges to  $y$  in  $B$  – whether  $y$  is in  $B$  or not.

For example if  $T$  is the reals and  $B = (0, 1)$ ,  $x = 2$ , then the bridge from  $x$  to  $B$  is  $[2, 1]$ . Notice that for trees, connected and pathwise connected are equivalent. One common use of bridges will be: if  $x$  is not in a properly embedded line  $l$  (for example an axis as defined below) let  $[x, y]$  be the bridge from  $x$  to  $l$ . The crucial property of the bridge is that given  $x$  and  $B$ , the bridge is *unique*. In various situations this will force some useful equalities of points. Another fundamental concept is:

**Definition 2.3** (axis). Suppose that  $g$  is a homeomorphism acting freely on a tree  $T$ . Then  $g$  has an axis  $\mathcal{A}_g$ , a properly embedded line in  $T$ , invariant under  $g$  and  $g$  acts by translations on  $\mathcal{A}_g$ .

This is classical. Here  $y$  is in  $\mathcal{A}_g$  if and only if  $yg$  is in  $(y, yg^2)$ , that is  $yg$  separates  $y$  from  $yg^2$ . Then it is easy to see that the axis must be the union of  $[yg^i, yg^{i+1}]$  where  $i \in \mathbb{Z}$  [Ba1], [Fe]. To obtain an element in  $\mathcal{A}_g$  consider any  $x \in T$ . If  $xg \in (x, xg^2)$  we are done. Else there is a unique

$$y \in [x, xg] \cap [x, xg^2] \cap [xg, xg^2].$$

$y$  is the basis of the tripod with corners  $x, xg, xg^2$  [Gr], [Gh-Ha]. A simple analysis of cases using free action yields  $y$  is in the axis of  $g$ .

Another simple but fundamental concept for us is:

**Definition 2.4** (local axis). Suppose  $l$  is a line in a tree  $T$  where a homeomorphism  $g$  acts by translation. Then  $l$  is a local axis for  $g$  and is denoted by  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_g$ . The local axis may not be unique, the context specifies which one we refer to.

For example if  $g$  acts in  $\mathbb{R}$  by  $xg = 2x$ , then  $\mathbb{R}_+, \mathbb{R}_-$  are both local axes of  $g$  with accumulation point  $x = 0$ . Another characterization of local axis:  $x$  is in a local axis of  $g$  if and only if  $xg$  separates  $x$  from  $xg^2$  (same definition as for axis except requiring that  $g$  acts freely in that case). Another characterization: suppose  $xg$  is not  $x$  and let  $\mathcal{U}$  be the component of  $T - \{x\}$  containing  $xg$ . Then  $x$  is in a local axis of  $g$  if and only if  $\mathcal{U}g \subset \mathcal{U}$ .

Let  $x$  be a point in a tree  $T$ . A *prong* at  $x$  is a non degenerate segment  $I$  of  $T$  so that  $x$  is one of the endpoints of  $I$ . Two prongs at  $x$  are equivalent if they share a subprong at  $x$ . Associated to a subprong  $I$  at  $x$  there is a unique component  $\mathcal{U}$  of  $T - \{x\}$  containing  $I - \{x\}$ .

**Notation.** If  $x, y, z$  are elements in a tree we will write  $x < y < z$  if  $y$  separates  $x$  from  $z$ , or  $y$  is in  $(x, z)$ . We say that  $x, y, z$  (in this order) are *aligned*. Also



$x < y \preceq z$  if one also allows  $y = z$  and so on. Notice that this is invariant under homeomorphism of the tree.

The following simple results will be very useful:

**Lemma 2.5.** *Let  $x$  be a point in a tree  $T$ . Then two prongs  $I_1, I_2$  at  $x$  are equivalent if and only if the associated complementary components  $\mathcal{U}_1, \mathcal{U}_2$  are the same.*

*Proof.* If  $I_1, I_2$  are equivalent, there is  $y$  in  $I_1 - \{x\}$  also in  $I_2$ . Then clearly  $y \in \mathcal{U}_1$  and  $y \in \mathcal{U}_2$ , so  $\mathcal{U}_1 = \mathcal{U}_2$ . Conversely suppose  $\mathcal{U}_1 = \mathcal{U}_2$ . If  $I_1$  is not equivalent to  $I_2$ , then  $I_1 \cap I_2 = \{x\}$  because  $T$  is a tree and it also follows that  $x$  separates  $I_1$  from  $I_2$ . This would imply  $\mathcal{U}_1, \mathcal{U}_2$  disjoint, contradiction.  $\square$

**Lemma 2.6.** *Let  $T$  be a tree and  $\eta$  a homeomorphism so that there are two points  $x, y$  of  $T$  so that  $x < x\eta < y < y\eta$  or  $x < y < x\eta < y\eta$ . Then  $x$  and  $y$  are in a local axis of  $\eta$ .*

*Proof.* We do the proof for the first situation, the other being very similar. Let  $\mathcal{U}$  be the component of  $T - \{x\}$  containing  $x\eta$ . Using  $x < x\eta < y$  this is also the component of  $T - \{x\}$  containing  $y$ . Apply  $\eta$ , then  $\mathcal{U}$  is taken to the component of  $T - \{x\eta\}$  containing  $y\eta$ . Then  $\mathcal{U}\eta$  is contained in  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $x$  is in a local axis. Apply  $\eta^{-1}$  to  $y$  to get  $y$  is in a local axis as well. We stress the two local axes produced in this way a priori may not be the same: there may be a fixed point of  $\eta$  in  $(x, y)$ .  $\square$

**Global fixed points.** Here we consider the case that an essential lamination  $\lambda$  on  $N$  would produce a trivial group action on a tree  $T$ .

Recall the notion of *efficient* transversal to a lamination: let  $\eta$  be a transversal to a lamination  $\lambda$ . Then  $\eta$  is efficient [Ga-Oe] if for any subarc  $\eta_0$  with both endpoints in leaves of  $\lambda$  and interior disjoint from  $\lambda$ , then  $\eta_0$  is not homotopic rel endpoints into a leaf of  $\lambda$ . Gabai and Oertel showed that if  $\lambda$  is essential then any efficient transversal cannot be homotoped rel endpoints into a leaf of  $\lambda$ . Also closed efficient transversals are not null homotopic.

**Lemma 2.7.** *If  $\lambda$  is an essential lamination in  $N$  then the associated group action of  $\pi_1(N)$  on a tree  $T$  as described above has no global fixed point and therefore is non trivial.*

*Proof.* Suppose on the contrary that a point  $x$  of  $T$  is left invariant by the whole group. Look at the preimage of  $x$  in the possibly non Hausdorff tree  $T_*$ . There are 3 options:

1.  $x$  comes from a non singular, Hausdorff leaf  $E$  of  $\tilde{\lambda}$ . Then  $E$  is left invariant by the whole group  $\pi_1(N)$ .

2.  $x$  comes from the closure  $R$  of a complementary region of  $\tilde{\lambda}$  in the universal cover. Then  $R$  is left invariant by the whole group. In this case let  $E$  be a boundary leaf of  $R$ .

3. Finally  $x$  may come from a non Hausdorff leaf  $E$ . Then the orbit of  $E$  under  $\pi_1(N)$  consists only of the non separated leaves from  $E$ .

By construction of the tree  $T$  above, these 3 cases are mutually exclusive. It follows that in any of the 3 options there is at least one component  $B$  of  $\tilde{N} - E$  which does not contain any translate of  $E$ . In option 1) any component will do, in option 2) choose the component not containing  $R - E$  and in option 3) choose the component not containing leaves non separated from  $E$ .

Let  $A = \pi(E)$  where  $\pi : \tilde{N} \rightarrow N$  is the universal covering map. Suppose first that  $A$  is not compact. Then it limits on some leaves of  $\lambda$  and there is a laminated box where  $A$  intersects it in at least 3 leaves and the box intersects an efficient transversal to  $\lambda$ . Lifting to  $\tilde{N}$  so that the middle leaf is  $E$  then the other 2 leaves are not  $E$  (efficient transversal) and one of them is contained in  $B$  producing a covering translate of  $E$  in  $B$ , contradiction. The same is of course true if  $A$  intersects an efficient closed transversal.

Now  $A$  is compact. If  $A$  is non separating, then it intersects a closed transversal (transverse to  $A$ , not necessarily to  $\lambda$ ) associated to  $g$  in  $\pi_1(N)$  only once. Same proof yields either  $Eg$  or  $Eg^{-1}$  in  $B$ , done.

Finally suppose that  $A$  is separating. Then  $C = \pi(B \cup E)$  is a compact submanifold of  $N$  which has  $A$  as its unique boundary component. For any  $g$  in  $\pi_1(C)$  then  $Eg$  is contained in  $B \cup E$ , so by hypothesis it must be  $E$  and therefore  $\pi_1(A)$  surjects in  $\pi_1(C)$ . As  $\lambda$  is essential then  $\pi_1(A)$  also injects in  $\pi_1(C)$  [Ga-Oe], so  $\pi_1(A)$  is isomorphic to  $\pi_1(C)$ . As  $C$  is irreducible [Ga-Oe], then Theorem 10.5 of Hempel [He] implies that  $C$  is homeomorphic to  $A \times I$  with  $A$  corresponding to  $A \times \{0\}$ . This contradicts the fact that  $A$  is the only boundary component of  $C$ . This finishes the proof of the lemma.  $\square$

**Remark.** Notice that leaves of essential laminations may not intersect a closed transversal. For example this occurs for separating incompressible surfaces. It also occurs for leaves of Reebless foliations which have a separating leaf (which necessarily must be a torus or Klein bottle) – there are many examples of these. So Reebless foliations which are also essential laminations need not be taut foliations!

**The group.** We now produce an explicit presentation of the group which will be analysed. The group is the fundamental group of the Dehn surgery manifold  $M_{p/q}$ . Start with  $M$  the torus bundle over the circle with monodromy induced by

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} m & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{where } m \leq -3.$$

For notational simplicity the dependence of  $M$  on  $A$  is omitted. The original fibering torus is denoted by  $T^2$ . The eigenvalues of  $A$  are

$$\frac{m \pm \sqrt{m^2 - 4}}{2}$$

which are both negative and the matrix is hyperbolic. The eigenvector directions produce two linear foliations in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  with irrational slope which are invariant under  $A$ . They induce two foliations in the torus  $T^2$ . Since  $A$  is integral it induces a homeomorphism  $\phi$  of  $T^2$ , which leaves the foliations invariant. Let  $O$  in  $T^2$  be the image of the origin of  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . Let  $M$  be the suspension of  $\phi$  and let  $\mathcal{F}$  be (say) the suspension of the stable foliation of  $T^2$ . Then  $\mathcal{F}$  has leaves which are planes, annuli and Möbius bands. Identify  $T^2$  with a fiber in  $M$  and let  $\delta$  be the orbit through  $O$ , which is a closed orbit intersecting  $T^2$  once. Since the eigenvalues of  $A$  are negative, the stable leaf containing  $\delta$  is a Möbius band. We do Dehn surgery on  $\delta$ . We first determine the fundamental group of  $M - N(\delta)$ . To do that let

$$D = N(\delta) \cap T^2 \text{ (a disk), } \quad V = T^2 - D \text{ (a punctured torus).}$$

Choose a basis for the homology of  $\partial N(\delta) = T_1$ , which is also a torus. Let  $(1, 0)$  be the curve in  $T_1$  bounding the fiber  $V$  of  $M - N(\delta)$ . Blow up the leaf of  $\mathcal{F}$  through  $\delta$ . It blows to a single annulus and the complementary region is a solid torus with core  $\delta$ . The completion of the complementary region is a solid torus with a closed curve in the boundary removed. The removed curve is the degeneracy locus of the complementary component [Ga-Ka1]. Since the leaf of  $\mathcal{F}$  was a Möbius band, the degeneracy locus intersects the curve  $(1, 0)$  twice. Choose the curve  $(0, 1)$  so that the degeneracy locus is the curve  $(1, 2)$  in this basis. After the blow up, the foliation  $\mathcal{F}$  becomes a lamination  $\lambda$  with a single complementary region, which is a solid torus.

Let now  $M_{p/q}$  be the manifold obtained from  $M$  by doing  $(q, p)$  Dehn surgery on  $\delta$ . By results about essential laminations, the lamination  $\lambda$  remains essential in  $M_{p/q}$  if  $|p - 2q| \geq 2$  [Ga-Oe], [Ga-Ka1]. Let  $\gamma$  be the curve  $(1, 0)$  in  $T_1$  and  $\tau$  be the curve  $(0, 1)$ . The degeneracy locus is a curve associated to  $\gamma\tau^2$ . Notice there are two tori here: one which is a fiber of the original fibration (here denoted by  $T^2$ ), another which is the boundary of  $N(\delta)$  (here denoted by  $T_1$ ). The Dehn surgery coefficients refer to  $T_1$ .

Suppose the disk  $D$  above is a round disk of radius  $\varepsilon$  sufficiently small. The universal abelian cover of  $T^2 - D$  is the plane with disks of radius  $\varepsilon$  around integer lattice points removed. Let  $E$  be the one around the origin. We pick 4 points in  $\partial E$ :

$$a = (-\varepsilon, 0), \quad b = (0, -\varepsilon), \quad c = (\varepsilon, 0) \quad \text{and} \quad d = (0, \varepsilon),$$

see Figure 1 (a). Let  $a'$  be the image of  $a$  under  $A$ , etc., see Figure 1 (b).

The image of  $\partial E$  under  $A$  is an ellipse which can be deformed back to  $\partial E$ , see Figure 1 (b). Notice  $b', d'$  are in the  $x$  axis and  $d' = a$ .

Let the image of  $a$  in  $T^2 - D$  be the basepoint of the fundamental group of  $M - N(\delta)$  for simplicity still denoted by  $a$  and likewise for  $b, c, d$ . Let  $l$  be an arc along the image of  $\partial E$  under  $A$ , going counterclockwise from  $d'$  to  $a'$ .

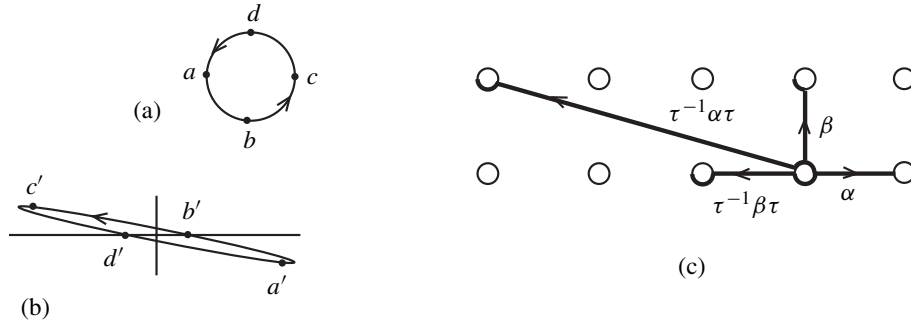


Figure 1. Computing the fundamental group of  $M - N(\delta)$ .

We pick a basis for  $\pi_1(T^2 - D)$ : Let  $\alpha = \overline{ac} * l_1$  (see Figure 1 (c) where the arc  $\overline{ac} \subset \partial E$  is traversed in the counterclockwise direction and  $l_1$  is parametrized as  $\{(t, 0) \mid \varepsilon \leq t \leq 1 - \varepsilon\}$ . Here  $*$  denotes concatenation of arcs, where  $\overline{ac}$  is traversed first and then  $l_1$ . Let also

$$\beta = \overline{ad}_{\text{clo}} * l_2 * \overline{ba}_{\text{clo}},$$

where  $l_2$  is parametrized as  $\{(0, t) \mid \varepsilon \leq t \leq 1 - \varepsilon\}$ , and the subscript “clo” means the arcs are traversed clockwise in  $\partial E$ . We identify  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  with their images in  $T_2 - D$ , so they generate the fundamental group of  $T_2 - D$ . It is easy to see that the curve

$$\gamma = [\alpha, \beta] = \alpha * \beta * \alpha^{-1} * \beta^{-1}$$

is just a counterclockwise turn around  $\partial E$ . Then

$$\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = l * \overline{a'c'} * l'_1 * l^{-1},$$

where  $l$  was defined above. The composition  $l * \overline{a'c'}$  is roughly one counterclockwise turn around  $\partial E$  so it is the curve  $\gamma$ . The straight arc  $l'_1$  goes from  $c' = (m\varepsilon, \varepsilon)$  to  $(m(1 - \varepsilon), 1 - \varepsilon)$  - roughly going one step up and  $|m|$  steps to the left. This together with  $l^{-1}$  can be isotoped to  $\beta\alpha^m$  (where we are identifying  $\alpha, \beta$  with the appropriate covering translates). We conclude that  $\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = \gamma\beta\alpha^m$ . Similarly

$$\tau^{-1}\beta\tau = l * \overline{a'd'}_{\text{clo}} * l'_2 * \overline{b'a'}_{\text{clo}} * l^{-1}.$$

Here  $l'_2$  is a straight path from  $(\varepsilon, 0)$  to  $(1 - \varepsilon, 0)$ . So in the same way it is easy to see that  $\tau^{-1}\beta\tau = \alpha^{-1}$ . Notice that  $\alpha, \tau$  generate  $\pi_1(M - N(\delta))$ . Hence

$$\pi_1(M - N(\delta)) = \{\alpha, \tau \mid \tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = \gamma\beta\alpha^m, \tau^{-1}\beta\tau = \alpha^{-1}, \gamma = [\alpha, \beta]\}.$$

After  $(q, p)$  Dehn surgery on  $\delta$  we obtain  $q\gamma + p\tau$  is the new meridian or  $\tau^p\gamma^q = 1$ . Hence we obtain

**The Group:**

$$\mathcal{G} = \pi_1(M_{p/q}) = \{\alpha, \tau \mid \tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = \gamma\beta\alpha^m, \tau^{-1}\beta\tau = \alpha^{-1}, \gamma = [\alpha, \beta], \tau^p\gamma^q = 1\}.$$

This group  $\mathcal{G}$  with this presentation will be fixed throughout the proof. In the proof we will use the relations above and the following variations of these relations extensively:

$$\begin{aligned} \tau^{-1}\beta\tau &= \alpha^{-1}, & \tau\alpha\tau^{-1} &= \beta^{-1}, \\ \tau^{-1}\alpha\tau &= \gamma\beta\alpha^m = \alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1} = \alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^{m-1}, \\ \alpha\tau &= \tau\gamma\beta\alpha^m = \tau\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}, \\ \alpha\beta &= \gamma\beta\alpha, & \text{or } \alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} &= \tau\gamma\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha. \end{aligned}$$

From the above it follows that  $\alpha^{m-1} = \tau^{-1}\beta^{1-m}\tau$  hence  $\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = \alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1} = \alpha\beta\tau^{-1}\beta^{1-m}$ . This is equivalent to  $\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha\beta^{m-1} = \beta\tau^{-1}$  and therefore we have  $\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha\beta^{m-1} = \tau\beta\tau^{-1}$  or

$$\tau\beta\tau^{-1} = \beta\alpha\beta^{m-1} = \gamma^{-1}\alpha\beta^m.$$

These and circular variations of these will be used throughout the article.

Since  $q, p$  are relatively prime there are  $e, f$  in  $\mathbb{Z}$  with  $ep + fq = 1$ . Let  $\kappa = \tau^f\gamma^{-e}$ . Then  $\kappa$  is a generator of the  $\mathbb{Z}$  subgroup of  $\mathcal{G}$  generated by  $\tau, \gamma$  and  $\tau = \kappa^q, \gamma = \kappa^{-p}$ .

### 3. Outline of the proof

As described above, the fundamental group of  $M_{p/q}$  with presentation  $\mathcal{G}$  is generated by two elements  $\alpha$  and  $\tau$ . Actions of a homeomorphism on a tree are easy to understand: either there is a fixed point or in the free case there is an invariant axis. The proof of the main theorem is split into cases as to whether the generators above act freely. There are 3 main cases to consider (when  $\tau$  acts freely it does not matter the behavior of  $\alpha$ ). The proof subdivides into various subcases. Invariably the analysis goes like this: apply a certain relation in the group to a well chosen point. One side of the relation implies the image of the point is in a certain region of the tree while the other side of the relation implies it is in a different region – contradiction! Homeomorphisms with fixed points may have local axes. This is extremely useful in a variety of cases.

A crucial difference from the case of foliations is that in the case of laminations the tree does not have a group invariant orientation in general. Hence orientation

dependent arguments cannot be used. This was very important and widely used in [RSS]. In order to stay in the orientation preserving world they restricted to  $p, m$  odd, which ensures the orientation hypothesis. Under these conditions on  $p, q$  (with  $p \geq q$  also) they ruled out the existence of Reebless foliations [RSS].

Since we do not have an orientation here, the condition  $m$  odd does not play a role, which allows us to consider  $m$  even as well. In addition if  $|p - 2q| \geq 2$  there is an essential lamination in the surgered manifold, so the exact condition  $|p - 2q| = 1$  has to appear in the analysis of the laminations case. Notice that  $|p - 2q| = 1$  obviously implies that  $p$  is odd.

On the other hand there are many examples with  $p$  even so that  $M_{p/q}$  has a Reebless foliation – for example  $p = 4, q = 1$  or  $p = 8, q = 3$  (this has  $p > q!$ ). So when  $p$  is even, then to rule out Reebless foliations, some further conditions on  $p, q$  are necessary.

Except for ruling out trivial actions, the proof here is done entirely in the tree – we never go back to the original non Hausdorff tree. For the sake of completeness we state this result from which the main theorem is an easy corollary:

**Theorem.** *Let  $M_{p/q}$  be the manifold described above. If  $m \leq -4$  and  $|p - 2q| = 1$ , then every action of  $\pi_1(M_{p/q})$  on a tree is trivial.*

Given the presentation of  $\mathcal{G}$  above, the proof of the main theorem is broken into four cases:

- Case R.  $\mathbb{R}$ -covered case.
- Case A.  $\tau$  acts freely.
- Case B.  $\alpha$  acts freely,  $\tau$  has a fixed point.
- Case C.  $\alpha$  and  $\tau$  have fixed points.

If a homeomorphism  $\mu$  acts freely on a tree, let  $\mathcal{A}_\mu$  be its axis. If  $\mu$  has a local axis, we denote it by  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\mu$ . Unlike a true axis, a homeomorphism may have more than one local axis. The context will make it clear which one is being considered. Assume by way of contradiction that  $\mathcal{G}$  acts non trivially on a tree  $T$ .

*Case R.* The  $\mathbb{R}$ -covered case is simple. Given that  $p$  is odd, this implies that  $\tau$  is orientation preserving in  $\mathbb{R}$ . The case  $\alpha$  orientation preserving is simple. The other case (which implies  $m$  is even) leads to  $p > 3q$  which for our purposes is enough. It also leads us to move away from orientation preserving arguments. Orientation preserving arguments were fundamental in the foliations analysis but in general cannot be used in the laminations case. We note that there is an easy non trivial linear action on  $\mathbb{R}$  when  $p = 4, q = 1$ . Notice that in this case  $p$  is even.

*Case A.* This implies that  $\kappa = \tau^f \gamma^{-e}$  also acts freely and  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa = \mathcal{A}_\tau$ . We analyse how  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  intersects  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha$  and other translates (here  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha$  is the image of  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  under  $\alpha$ ). Let  $u = \alpha\beta$ . One uses the relation  $\alpha\beta = \gamma\beta\alpha$  to analyse how  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  intersects  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u$  which

breaks down into various cases as to whether this intersection is empty, a single point or a segment. One particularly tricky case needs the condition  $m \neq -3$ .

*Case B.* Let  $z$  be a fixed point of  $\tau$ . First suppose that  $z$  is not in the axis  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  of  $\alpha$ . Suppose there is no fixed point of  $\tau$  between  $z$  and  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Here let  $\mathcal{U}$  be the component of  $T - \{z\}$  containing  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . The case  $\mathcal{U}\tau \neq \mathcal{U}$  is easy to deal with. It follows that  $\mathcal{U}\tau = \mathcal{U}$  producing a local axis  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  of  $\tau$  which is contained in  $\mathcal{U}$  and has one limit point in  $z$ . The proof breaks down as to whether  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  intersects  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  or not. Empty intersections are easy to deal with, the other case being trickier.

Then suppose  $z$  is in  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . We remark this is a crucial case, because this is likely what happens for the essential laminations we know to exist when  $|p - 2q| \geq 2$ . These come from the original stable lamination on the fibering manifold (a torus bundle over  $\mathbb{S}^1$ ). In that manifold,  $\alpha$  acted freely and  $\tau$  had a fixed point in  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . After the surgery  $\alpha$  would still have at least a local axis, which contains a fixed point of  $\tau$ . So one knows the exact condition  $|p - 2q| = 1$  will have to be used here!

In this case consider  $\mathcal{U}_1$  the component of  $T - \{z\}$  containing  $z\alpha$  and  $\mathcal{U}_2$  the one containing  $z\alpha^{-1}$ . It is easy to show that  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau$  is not  $\mathcal{U}_1$  and that  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau$  is in fact equal to  $\mathcal{U}_2$ . When  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} = \mathcal{U}_2$  then one produces a contradiction just using that  $p$  is odd. The case  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} \neq \mathcal{U}_2$  or  $\mathcal{U}_2\tau \neq \mathcal{U}_1$  is much more interesting. Here the exact condition  $|p - 2q| = 1$  is used to show it would imply  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau = \mathcal{U}_1$  which was disallowed at the beginning. This actually has connections with the topology of the situation, see detailed explanation in Section 6. This is a crucial part of the proof. One very tricky issue is that a priori  $z$  is only a fixed point of  $\tau$  and not of  $\gamma$  – part of the proof is ruling this out.

*Case C.* Generally an axis is good because it gives information about where points go. The case of fixed points is trickier and one many times searches for a local axis.

Here let  $s$  be a fixed point of  $\kappa$  and  $w$  a fixed point of  $\alpha$  so that there is no fixed point of either in  $(s, w)$ . Notice there may be fixed points of  $\tau$  in  $(s, w)$ ! Let  $\mathcal{W}$  be the component of  $T - \{s\}$  containing  $w$  and  $\mathcal{V}$  the component of  $T - \{w\}$  containing  $s$ . The first part of the proof shows that  $\mathcal{W}\tau = \mathcal{W}$  and  $\mathcal{V}\alpha = \mathcal{V}$ . This situation has moderately involved arguments. This immediately produces a local axis  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  of  $\alpha$  contained in  $\mathcal{V}$  and with one limit point  $w$ . One does not have yet a local axis for  $\tau$  because we do not know a priori that  $\tau$  has no fixed points in  $(s, w)$ . Some technical complications ensue.

One then shows that  $s\alpha, s\alpha^{-1}$  are in  $\mathcal{W}$ . Let  $z$  be the fixed point of  $\tau$  in  $[s, w)$  which is closest to  $w$  –  $z$  could be  $s$ . Using the previous results, we show that the component  $\mathcal{U}$  of  $T - \{z\}$  containing  $w$  is invariant under  $\tau$ . Now this produces a local axis  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  of  $\tau$  in  $\mathcal{U}$  with ideal point  $z$  and some further properties. One then shows that  $w$  is not in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and  $z$  is not in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ .

We are now in familiar ground. If  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \cap \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  has at most one point, then it is easy. When  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \cap \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  has more than one point we use arguments done in case B –

this part of the arguments in case B is done in more generality using local axis (rather than axis as needed in case B) and can be used in case C as well. This finishes the proof of case C. This finally yields the proof of the main theorem.  $\square$

The arguments in this article are very involved. One possibility to read the article and get a quick grasp of the proof is to first analyse the  $\mathbb{R}$ -covered proof. Then go to the proof of case B.2 –  $\alpha$  acts freely and  $\tau$  has a fixed point in the axis of  $\alpha$  – this case admits essential laminations if  $|p - 2q| \geq 2$  and the topology can be detected. Then read the proof of  $\tau$  acts freely and the other proofs.

We note that  $\mathbb{Z}$  actions on non Hausdorff trees had been previously analysed in [Fe] and [Ro-St1], [Ro-St2], with consequences for pseudo-Anosov flows [Fe] and Seifert fibered spaces [Ro-St1], [Ro-St2].

There is a large literature of group actions on trees which were brought to the forefront by Serre’s fundamental monograph [Se]. The analysis usually involves a metric which is invariant under the actions [Mo-Sh1], [Mo-Sh2], [Mo-Sh3] or actions on simplicial trees [Se]. We stress that the tree involved in here is not simplicial and it is not presented in general with a group invariant metric – unless there is a holonomy invariant transverse measure of full support in the lamination, e.g when there is an incompressible surface. So the proof is entirely topological and in that sense elementary. The topology of the manifold, particularly the condition  $|p - 2q| = 1$  plays a crucial role. Notice that in the foliations case there is a pseudo-metric lying in the background which is used from time to time to deal with some critical cases in [RSS]. The pseudometric distance between two points measures how many jumps between non separated points are necessary to go from one point to the other. This pseudometric was analysed and used previously by Barbot in [Ba1], [Ba2] with consequences for foliations. In the laminations case, such a pseudo-metric does not seem to give useful information, because in some sense the singularities or prongs also allows one to “change” direction – there is much more flexibility.

#### 4. Case R: the $\mathbb{R}$ -covered case

For the remainder of the article we consider the manifold  $M_{p/q}$  as described in Section 2 with fundamental group  $\mathcal{G}$ . The goal is to show it does not admit an essential lamination. Suppose then on the contrary that there is an essential lamination  $\lambda$  on  $M_{p/q}$ . Let  $T$  be the associated tree with non trivial action of  $\mathcal{G}$  on it. Notice that since  $\alpha, \tau$  generate  $\mathcal{G}$ , no point of  $T$  is fixed by both  $\alpha$  and  $\tau$ .

The conditions on the parameters are  $|p - 2q| = 1$  and  $m \leq -4$ . They will not be used in full force for all the arguments. Many times all we need is  $p \geq q$  or  $p$  odd or  $m$  negative or none of these. The proof is done by subdividing into subcases and showing each subcase is impossible leading to various contradictions.



In this section we assume that  $T$  is homeomorphic to the real numbers and study non trivial actions of  $\mathcal{G}$  in  $\mathbb{R}$ . Notice that since  $\gamma$  is a commutator, it is an orientation preserving homeomorphism of  $\mathbb{R}$ . As  $\tau^p \gamma^q = \text{id}$ ,  $\tau^p$  is also orientation preserving.

We use the relations from the group presentation of  $\mathcal{G}$  or variations thereof.

Suppose first the action is orientation preserving on  $\mathbb{R}$ :

**Case R.1.**  $\alpha, \tau$  are orientation preserving.

As  $\beta = \tau\alpha\tau^{-1}$  then  $\beta$  also is orientation preserving and so is the whole group  $\mathcal{G}$ . We subdivide into subcases:

**Case R.1.1.**  $\tau$  has a fixed point  $x$ .

Then  $x\alpha$  is not  $x$ . Orient  $\mathbb{R}$  so that  $x\alpha > x$ . As  $\gamma$  is orientation preserving then  $x\gamma = x$ . Then applying  $\gamma\tau\beta\alpha^m = \alpha\tau$  to  $x$ :

$$x\gamma\tau\beta\alpha^m = x\alpha\tau > x\tau = x$$

which uses  $\tau$  orientation preserving. Hence  $x\beta\alpha^m > x$  or  $x\beta > x\alpha^{-m} > x$  (as  $-m > 0$ ). Hence  $x\beta^{-1} < x$ . But also

$$x\beta^{-1} = x\tau\alpha\tau^{-1} = x\alpha\tau^{-1} > x\tau^{-1} = x.$$

This is a contradiction, ruling out this case.

**Case R.1.2.**  $\tau$  acts freely,  $\alpha$  has a fixed point  $x$ .

Assume  $\tau$  is increasing in  $\mathbb{R}$ . As  $\tau = \kappa^q$  and  $q$  is (always) positive then  $\kappa$  is increasing. Here use  $x\alpha\tau = x\tau = x\gamma\tau\beta\alpha^m$ . Hence  $x\tau\alpha^{-m} = x\gamma\tau\beta$ . As  $x\tau > x$  then  $x\tau\alpha^{-m} > x$ . Hence  $x\gamma\tau > x\beta^{-1}$ . Use  $\gamma = \kappa^{-p}$  and  $\gamma\tau = \kappa^{q-p}$ . As  $q \leq p$  then  $q - p \leq 0$  and  $\gamma\tau$  is monotone decreasing or constant. Hence

$$x\beta^{-1} < x\gamma\tau \leq x.$$

One fact that will be used in a lot of arguments is that under the condition  $p \geq q$  when  $\gamma, \tau$  act freely and  $x\tau > x$  then  $x\gamma \leq x\tau^{-1}$ . Notice that  $x\tau^{-1}\beta = x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = x\tau^{-1}$ . On the other hand

$$x\beta = x\alpha\beta = x\gamma\beta\alpha \leq x\tau^{-1}\beta\alpha = x\tau^{-1}\alpha < x\alpha = x,$$

leading to the contradiction that both  $x\beta$  and  $x\beta^{-1}$  are  $< x$ .

Notice a lot of these arguments are using orientation preserving homeomorphisms.

**Case R.1.3.**  $\tau$  acts freely increasing in  $\mathbb{R}$  and  $\alpha$  acts freely, also increasing in  $\mathbb{R}$ .

Take any  $x$  in  $\mathbb{R}$ . Then  $x\alpha\tau > x$  so  $x\gamma\tau\beta\alpha^m > x$ . So  $x\gamma\tau\beta > x\alpha^{-m} > x$ . Since  $x\gamma\tau \leq x$  this implies  $x\beta > x$ . On the other hand,

$$x\beta = x\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} < x\tau\tau^{-1} = x,$$

contradiction.

**Case R.1.4.**  $\tau$  acts freely and increasing in  $\mathbb{R}$ ,  $\alpha$  acts freely and decreasing in  $\mathbb{R}$ .

This implies  $z\alpha^{-1} > z$  for all  $z$  in  $\mathbb{R}$ . For any  $x$  in  $\mathbb{R}$ ,  $x\beta = x\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} > x\tau\tau^{-1} = x$ . Also  $x\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau < x$  for all  $x$ . Hence

$$x\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1} = x\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau < x,$$

for all  $x$ . Hence  $x\alpha\beta < x\alpha\alpha^{-m} < x\alpha$  for all  $x$  ( $-m > 0$ ). But this contradicts  $(x\alpha)\beta > x\alpha$  because  $\beta$  is increasing everywhere as proved above.

This finishes the analysis of  $T$  homeomorphic to  $\mathbb{R}$  and orientation preserving action.

We now deal with orientation reversing cases. The general case of  $\tau$  orientation reversing is hard, so we use one of the hypothesis to discard it as follows:  $\tau^p = \gamma^{-q}$  is orientation preserving as  $\gamma$  always is. We are mainly interested in  $|p - 2q| = 1$ , which implies  $p$  odd and if  $p$  is odd and  $\tau^p$  orientation preserving then  $\tau$  is also orientation preserving. We now deal with the case  $\alpha$  orientation reversing.

**Case R.2.**  $\alpha$  orientation reversing,  $\tau$  orientation preserving.

Let  $x$  be the unique fixed point of  $\alpha$ . As  $x\tau \neq x$ , assume  $x\tau > x$ . As  $\alpha$  is conjugate to  $\beta$ , then  $\beta$  also reverses orientation. Then  $\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = \gamma\beta\alpha^m$  implies that  $\alpha^m$  is orientation preserving. Equivalently,  $m$  is even.

As  $\tau = \kappa^q$  and  $q > 0$ , this implies  $\kappa$  is increasing in  $x$ . Notice that  $x\tau^{-1}$  is the unique fixed point of  $\beta$ . The subcases depend on the relative position of  $x\tau\alpha$  and  $x\tau^{-1}$ . Notice that  $x\tau > x$ , so  $x\tau\alpha < x\alpha = x$ .

**Case R.2.1.**  $x\tau\alpha < x\tau^{-1}$ .

Then  $x\tau\alpha\tau^{-1} = x\beta^{-1} < x\tau^{-2}$ . Notice

$$x\tau\gamma\beta\alpha^m = x\alpha\tau = x\tau > x$$

so  $x\tau\gamma\beta > x\alpha^{-m} = x$ . This is because  $\alpha^{-m}$  is orientation preserving. As  $\beta$  reverses orientation, then

$$x\tau\gamma < x\beta^{-1} < x\tau^{-2}$$

or  $x\tau^3\gamma < x$ . As  $\tau^3 = \kappa^{3q}$  and  $\gamma = \kappa^{-q}$ , then  $x\kappa^{3q-p} < x$ . As  $\kappa$  is increasing in  $x$  then  $3q - p < 0$  or  $p > 3q$ . Arguments such as this will be used in various parts of the proof. Since in the end we want  $p = 2q \pm 1$  we can discard this case.

**Remark.** What we really wanted was to rule out this case without using  $p = 2q \pm 1$ , but we were unable to do that. Our partial results (without using  $p = 2q \pm 1$ ) show that  $x\tau\alpha^3 > x\tau\alpha$  so  $x < x\tau\alpha^2 < x\tau$ . Also there is a fixed point of  $\alpha^2$  between  $x\tau$  and  $x\tau^2$  and  $\alpha^2$  acts expandingly (away from  $x$ ) in some point. Something similar is also true in the following case.

**Case R.2.2.**  $x\tau\alpha > x\tau^{-1}$ .

First notice that  $x\beta^{-1} < x\tau^{-1}$ . Use

$$(x\tau)\tau\gamma\beta\alpha^m = (x\tau)\alpha\tau > x\tau^{-1}\tau = x$$

so  $x\tau^2\gamma\beta > x\alpha^{-m} = x$  ( $m$  even) and

$$x\tau^2\gamma < x\beta^{-1} < x\tau^{-1}.$$

We conclude as in the previous case that  $x\tau^3\gamma < x$  or  $p > 3q$ , also disallowed.

The reader may think we just got lucky to get  $p > 3q$  as we have the hypothesis  $p = 2q \pm 1$ . The remaining case explains why this has happened.

**Case R.2.3.**  $x\tau\alpha = x\tau^{-1}$ .

This case is much more interesting. First

$$x\alpha\tau = x\tau\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}.$$

Since  $x\tau\alpha = x\tau^{-1}$  this is left invariant by  $\beta$ , so the right side is  $x\tau\alpha\alpha^{m-1} = x\tau\alpha^m$  equal to  $x\tau$ . Since  $m$  is even,  $\alpha^m$  preserves orientation, therefore  $x\tau\alpha^2 = x\tau$ . Also  $x\tau\alpha = x\tau\alpha^{-1} = x\tau^{-1}$ . Now notice that

$$x\tau\gamma\beta\alpha^m = x\alpha\tau = x\tau, \text{ so } x\tau\gamma = x\tau\alpha^{-m}\beta^{-1},$$

or  $x\tau\gamma = x\tau\beta^{-1}$ . Now we show that  $x\tau^2\alpha = x\tau^{-2}$ . To show this use  $x\beta^{-1}\tau = x\tau\alpha = x\tau^{-1}$ , hence  $x\beta^{-1} = x\tau^{-2}$ . Use

$$\tau^{-2}\beta\tau^2 = \tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\tau = \alpha^{1-m}\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$$

applied to  $x$ :

$$x\tau^{-2}\beta\tau^2 = x\alpha^{1-m}\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$$

or  $x\beta^{-1}\beta\tau^2 = x\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  so

$$x\tau^2 = x\tau^{-2}\alpha^{-1}.$$

Then

$$x\tau^{-2} = x\tau^2\alpha = (x\tau)\tau\alpha = x\tau\beta^{-1}\tau = x\tau\gamma\tau$$

or

$$x\gamma\tau^4 = x.$$

As seen before this implies  $p = 4q$  or  $p = 4, q = 1$ . This is disallowed by  $p$  being odd.

We remark that in this case the group in fact acts non trivially in  $\mathbb{R}$ . For instance let

$$x\alpha = -x, \quad x\tau = x + 1.$$

It is easy to check they satisfy the equations if  $m$  is even!

It may be true that this is the only possibility and when  $x\tau\alpha \neq x\tau^{-1}$  we get a perturbation of this, namely that  $p$  is close to  $4q$  and in fact  $p > 3q$ .

### 5. Case A: $\tau$ acts freely

In this section we consider the case that  $\tau$  acts freely in  $T$ . This implies that  $\kappa^q$  acts freely in the tree, and therefore  $\kappa$  itself acts freely. In addition the axes are the same  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa = \mathcal{A}_\tau$ . Here we will use the relation  $\alpha\beta = \gamma\beta\alpha$  in the following form, defining an element  $u$  of  $\mathcal{G}$ :

$$u = \alpha\beta = \alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = \gamma\beta\alpha = \gamma\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha.$$

We will consider the intersections  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha$  and  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa u$ . The axis  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  is homeomorphic to the real numbers. Put an order  $<$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  so that  $x < x\tau$  for any  $x$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . This induces an order  $<_\alpha$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha$  so that  $x < y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  if and only if  $x\alpha <_\alpha y\alpha$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha$  and similarly put order  $<_u$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u$  so that  $x < y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  if and only if  $xu <_u yu$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u$ .

**Case A.1.**  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa$  has at most one point.

If the intersection is a single point  $x$ , let  $y = x$  as well.

If they are disjoint, there is a single point  $x$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  bridging to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha$ . For instance  $x$  is the unique point so that there is a path from  $x$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha$  intersecting  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  only in  $x$ . Another way to characterize  $x$ , it is the only point so that  $x$  separates the rest of  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha$ . In other words the components of  $T - \{x\}$  containing  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha$  and the rest of  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  are all disjoint. In the same way there is a single  $y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha$  which is the closest to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . Then  $[x, y]$  is a path from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha$  so that  $(x, y)$  does not intersect either  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  or  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha$  – this is an equivalent way to get the segment  $[x, y]$ . This path  $[x, y]$  is called the *bridge* from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha$ . This extended notion of bridges will also be used in the article. It is invariant by homeomorphisms of the tree. The bridge between connected sets is also unique.

We now use the relation above. The proof is very similar to ping pong lemma arguments. Since  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  is invariant under  $\gamma$  and  $\tau$ , the right side says that  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u = \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha$ .

The bridge from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha$  is  $[x, y]$  - degenerate  $[x, x]$  when they intersect in a point. Therefore the bridge from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1}$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  is  $[x\alpha^{-1}, y\alpha^{-1}]$ , see Figure 2 (a). Then the bridge from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  is  $[x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}, y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}]$ . This implies that

$$\text{the bridge from } \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha \text{ to } \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha \text{ is } [x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha, y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha].$$

Notice that  $y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  is not  $y\alpha^{-1}$ . Therefore  $y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha$  is not  $y$ , but  $y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha$  as  $y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . It now follows that

$$\text{the bridge from } \mathcal{A}_\kappa u = \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha \text{ to } \mathcal{A}_\kappa \text{ is } [x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha, x].$$

On the other hand use that  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u = \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$ . The bridge from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha\tau$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  is  $[y\tau, x\tau]$ , see Figure 2 (b). The bridge from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1}$  is  $[y\tau\alpha^{-1}, x\tau\alpha^{-1}]$

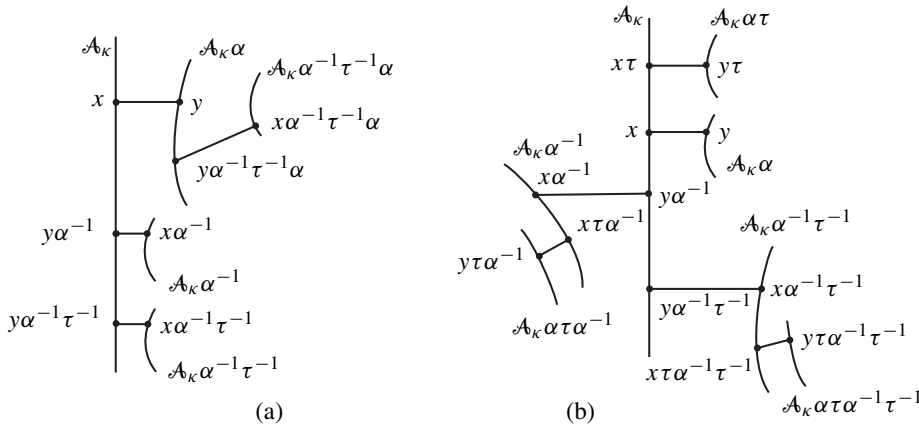


Figure 2. The case  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha = \emptyset$ . The same arguments can be used for intersection a single point. (a) Using  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u = \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha$ . (b) Using  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u = \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$ .

and the bridge from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1}$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  is  $[x\alpha^{-1}, y\alpha^{-1}]$ . Since  $x\alpha^{-1}$  is not equal to  $x\tau\alpha^{-1}$  then the bridge from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  is  $[y\tau\alpha^{-1}, y\alpha^{-1}]$ . Finally

$$\text{the bridge from } \mathcal{A}_\kappa u \text{ to } \mathcal{A}_\kappa \text{ is } [y\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}, y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}].$$

Since the bridge from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  is uniquely defined this implies

$$y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = x, \quad y\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha.$$

So  $y = x\tau\alpha$  and

$$x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha = x\tau\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}, \quad \text{or} \quad x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau\alpha = x\tau\alpha\tau.$$

Use  $\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = \alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$ , so

$$\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau\alpha = \alpha^{-1}\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}\alpha = \beta\alpha^m = \gamma^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau,$$

so  $x\gamma^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = x\tau\alpha\tau$ , or  $x\gamma^{-1}\tau^{-1} = x\tau$ . This implies  $x\gamma\tau^2 = x$  and as seen before implies  $p = 2q$ . This is disallowed by  $p$  odd.

We now consider intersections with more than one point.

**Case A.2.**  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha = [x, y]$ . Here  $x$  is not equal to  $y$  and  $x < y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . We include some ideal point cases:  $x$  could  $-\infty$  and  $y$  could be  $+\infty$ , in which case the intersection is a ray in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . On the other hand we can never have  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa = \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha$ . Otherwise  $\alpha, \tau$  leave  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  invariant, so the whole group does. But  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  is homeomorphic to  $\mathbb{R}$  – this was disallowed by no actions on  $\mathbb{R}$ .

Since the intersection is a non trivial interval one considers separately whether the orders  $<$ ,  $<_\alpha$  agree on the intersection.

**Case A.2.1.** The orders  $<$  and  $<_\alpha$  agree on  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha$ .

It is easy to check that this is equivalent to  $x\alpha^{-1} < y\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ , by applying  $\alpha$  to the pair  $x\alpha^{-1}$ ,  $y\alpha^{-1}$  both of which are in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ .

We now consider  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u$  (with  $u = \alpha\beta$  as in case A.1). We first use  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u = \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha$  (see case A.1). Notice that

$$\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha^{-1} = [x\alpha^{-1}, y\alpha^{-1}] \text{ so } \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = [x\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}, y\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}],$$

in the correct order. Hence

$$\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha = [x\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha, y\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha].$$

In addition  $x\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha <_\alpha y\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha$ .

Notice that  $x\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} < x\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ , hence  $x\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha <_\alpha x$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha$ . Also  $y\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha <_\alpha y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha$ . Given this there are 3 options:

1) If  $y\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha <_\alpha x$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha$  then  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = \emptyset$  and the bridge from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u$  is  $[x, y\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha]$ , Figure 3 (a).

2) If  $y\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha >_\alpha x$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha$  then  $y\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha$  is in  $(x, y)$  and  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = [x, y\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha]$ . In addition the orders  $<$  and  $<_u$  agree on  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha$ , see Figure 3 (b).

3) If  $y\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha = x$ , then  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = [z, x]$ . In addition if  $z$  is not  $x$  then the orders  $<$  and  $<_u$  disagree on  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa u$ , see Figure 3 (c). In this case both  $x$  and  $y$  are finite. The last option can occur because  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u$  can enter  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  in  $x$  but rather than going up, it will go into the opposite direction – the one containing  $x\tau^{-1}$ .

Notice that the 3 options are mutually exclusive. We now consider  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u = \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}$ . Use

$$\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = (\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha) \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}.$$

Here  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = [x\tau, y\tau]$ . So whether  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \alpha^{-1}$  and  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  intersect, depends on the relative positions of  $x\tau$  and  $y$ . Notice that  $x\tau > x$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ .

1') If  $x\tau > y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  then  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha = \emptyset$ , so  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \alpha^{-1} \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = \emptyset$ . Therefore  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = \emptyset$  and the bridge from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u$  is  $[y\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}, x\tau \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}]$ , see Figure 4 (a). Notice the bridge from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha$  is  $[x\tau, y]$ , so bridge from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \alpha^{-1}$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  is  $[x\tau \alpha^{-1}, y\alpha^{-1}]$ . Here  $x, y$  finite.

2') If  $x\tau < y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  then  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha = [x\tau, y]$ , then  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa u$  is  $[x\tau \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}, y\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}]$  (the first term smaller in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ ), and the orders  $<$  and  $<_u$  agree on  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa u$ , see Figure 4 (b).

3') If  $x\tau = y$ , then  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha = [y, v]$ . Notice we may have  $v \neq y$ . So  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = [y\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}, w]$ , where  $w = v\alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}$ . Here  $x$  and  $y$  are finite and if  $w$  is not equal to  $x\tau \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}$ , then the orders  $<$  and  $<_u$  disagree on  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa u$ .

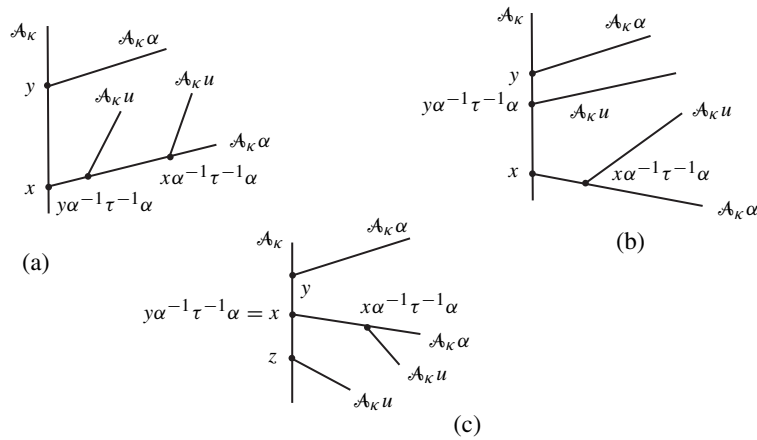


Figure 3. Evaluating  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa$ , using  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u = \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha$ , (a)  $y \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha <_\alpha x$ , (b)  $y \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha >_\alpha x$ , (c)  $y \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha = x$ .

Notice that order in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau$  goes from  $v$  to  $y$ , so the increasing order  $<_u$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u$  from  $w = v \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}$  to  $y \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}$ , see Figure 4 (c).

Notice that again all 3 cases are mutually exclusive. Therefore we can match the 2 pairs of 3 possibilities to get 3 mutually exclusive cases:

**I.**  $y \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha <_\alpha x$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha$  or  $x \tau > y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  and  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa u = \emptyset$ . In this case

$$[x, y \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha] = [y \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}, x \tau \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}].$$

**II.**  $y \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha >_\alpha x$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha$  or  $x \tau < y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  and

$$\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa u = [x, y \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha] = [x \tau \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}, y \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}].$$

**III.**  $y \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \alpha = x$  or  $x \tau = y$ . Then

$$\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa u = [z, x] = [y \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}, w].$$

If  $z$  is not  $x$  then the orders  $<$  and  $<_u$  disagree on  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa u$ .

We now deal with each situation separately.

**Situation II.** Here  $x \tau \alpha = x \tau$  and  $x \tau$  is in  $(x, y)$ . Let  $\mathcal{U}_1$  (respectively  $\mathcal{U}_2$ ) be the component of  $T - \{x \tau\}$  containing  $y$  (respectively  $x$ ). Here  $[x, y] = \mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha$ ,  $x \tau$  is in the interior of  $[x, y]$  and then the orders  $<$ ,  $<_\alpha$  agree on  $[x, y]$ . Notice that  $y \alpha >_\alpha x \tau \alpha = x \tau$  and  $y \alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha$  so  $y \alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_1$ . It follows that the prongs  $[x \tau, y]$ ,  $[x \tau, y \alpha]$  are equivalent. By Lemma 2.5,  $\mathcal{U}_1 \alpha = \mathcal{U}_1$ . In the same way  $x \alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2$  and  $\mathcal{U}_2 \alpha = \mathcal{U}_2$ . This situation is disallowed by the following lemma.

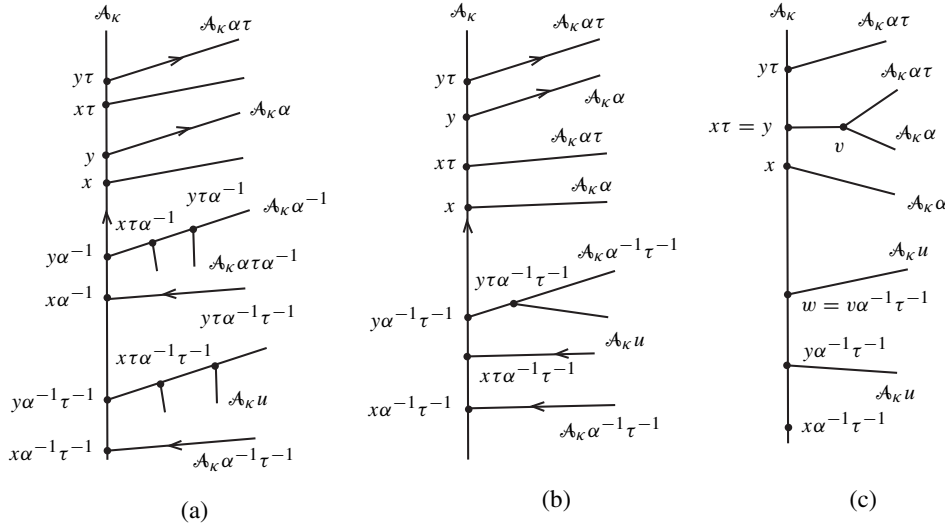


Figure 4. Using  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u = \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}$ , (a)  $x\tau > y$ , (b)  $x\tau < y$ , (c)  $x\tau = y$ .

**Lemma 5.1.** *Suppose that  $\mathcal{L}$  is a local axis for  $\kappa$  and  $r$  is a point in  $\mathcal{L}$  with  $r\alpha = r$ . Suppose that  $\mathcal{U}_1$  ( $\mathcal{U}_2$  respectively) is the component of  $T - \{r\}$  containing  $r\tau$  ( $r\tau^{-1}$  respectively). Then at least one of  $\mathcal{U}_1$  or  $\mathcal{U}_2$  is not invariant under  $\alpha$ .*

*Proof.* On the contrary suppose that  $\mathcal{U}_i \alpha = \mathcal{U}_i$  for  $i = 1, 2$ . We will arrive at a contradiction. Let  $\mathcal{V}_i = \mathcal{U}_i \tau^{-1}$ . Then the conjugation of  $\beta$  with  $\alpha^{-1}$  by  $\tau$  implies that  $\mathcal{V}_i \beta = \mathcal{V}_i$ ,  $i = 1, 2$ . Use

$$r\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = r\gamma\beta\alpha^m.$$

Since  $p \geq q$ , then  $r\gamma \leq r\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}$  (with  $\tau$  increasing in  $\mathcal{L}$ ) and so  $r\gamma\beta$  is in  $\mathcal{V}_2 \cup \{r\tau^{-1}\}$  contained in  $\mathcal{U}_2$ . Therefore  $r\gamma\beta\alpha^m$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2$ . Consequently

$$r\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{U}_2 \quad \text{and} \quad r\tau^{-1}\alpha \in \mathcal{U}_2\tau^{-1} = \mathcal{V}_2. \tag{*}$$

On the other hand  $r\gamma \in \mathcal{V}_2 \cup \{r\tau^{-1}\}$ , so

$$r\beta\alpha^{-1} = r\gamma\beta \in \mathcal{V}_2 \cup \{r\tau^{-1}\},$$

so  $r\tau^{-1}$  is in  $[r\beta\alpha^{-1}, r)$ . Apply  $\alpha$  to obtain

$$r\tau^{-1}\alpha \in [r\beta, r). \tag{**}$$

Now

$$r\beta = r\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \text{ and } r\tau \in \mathcal{U}_1 \Rightarrow r\tau\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_1 \Rightarrow r\beta = r\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{V}_1.$$



As  $r$  is also in  $\mathcal{V}_1$ , it follows from (\*\*\*) that  $r\tau^{-1}\alpha$  is also in  $\mathcal{V}_1$ . This contradicts (\*) above and finishes the proof of the lemma.  $\square$

**Remark.** Later on, in the proof of Lemma 7.3 we prove that this is actually true if  $\mathcal{L}$  is only a local axis for  $\tau$ , as opposed to being a local axis for  $\kappa$ . The proof is more involved and the stronger result is needed for case C.

**Situation III.** Here  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = [z, x]$  with  $z \leq x$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . Then

$$\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \alpha^{-1} \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = [z\tau, x\tau] = [z\tau, y].$$

Hence  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha = [z\tau\alpha, y\alpha]$  and  $y = z\tau\alpha \leq_\alpha y\alpha$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha$  – this is the crucial fact, see Figure 5. Now

$$\begin{aligned} x\gamma^{-1}\alpha &= x\beta\alpha\beta^{-1} = x\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha\beta^{-1} \\ &= y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha\beta^{-1} = x\beta^{-1} = x\tau\alpha\tau^{-1} = y\alpha\tau^{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

Here the bridge of  $y\alpha$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  is  $[y\alpha, y]$  (which a priori could be the single point  $y$ ). So the bridge from  $y\alpha\tau^{-1}$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  is  $[y\alpha\tau^{-1}, y\tau^{-1}] = [y\alpha\tau^{-1}, x]$ . On the other hand  $y \leq x\gamma^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  (using  $p \geq q$ ), so  $y\alpha \leq_\alpha x\gamma^{-1}\alpha$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha$ . It follows that the bridge from  $x\gamma^{-1}\alpha$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  is  $[x\gamma^{-1}\alpha, y]$ . By the above formulas,  $x\gamma^{-1} = y\alpha\tau^{-1}$ , so this would imply  $x = y$ , contradiction.

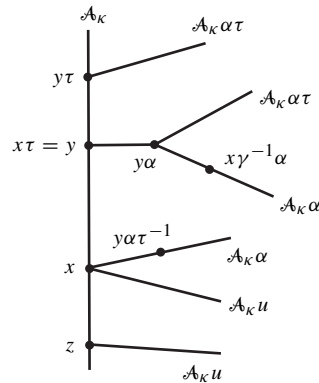


Figure 5. Situation III leading to a contradiction.

**Situation I.** Surprisingly this is the most difficult case. Here

$$\begin{aligned} y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha &<_\alpha x \text{ in } \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha, & x\tau > y \text{ in } \mathcal{A}_\kappa, \\ x &= y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}, & y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha &= x\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

As  $y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha <_{\alpha} x$  in  $\mathcal{A}_{\kappa}\alpha$  then  $y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha$  is not in  $\mathcal{A}_{\kappa}$ . Also

$$x\alpha = (y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha)\alpha = x\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = x\beta,$$

so  $x\alpha = x\beta$  – this is a crucial fact in this proof. The bridge from  $x\alpha$  to  $\mathcal{A}_{\kappa}$  is  $[x\alpha, x]$ . Notice also that

$$x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha <_{\alpha} y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha <_{\alpha} x \quad \text{in } \mathcal{A}_{\kappa}\alpha,$$

so the bridge from  $x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha$  to  $\mathcal{A}_{\kappa}$  is  $[x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha, x]$ . It follows that

the bridge from  $x\alpha\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau$  to  $\mathcal{A}_{\kappa}$  is  $[x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau, x\tau] = [x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau, y\alpha^{-1}]$ .

Now

$$x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = (x\alpha^{-1})\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1} = x\beta\alpha^{m-1} = x\alpha\alpha^{m-1} = x\alpha^m.$$

Here  $x\alpha < x < y < y\alpha^{-1}$  – they are aligned. It follows from Lemma 2.6 that  $x, x\alpha$  are in a local axis  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$  for  $\alpha$ , similarly  $y$  is also in a local axis. Since  $y$  is in  $[x\alpha^m, x]$ , then also  $y, y\alpha^{-1}$  are in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$ . In the same way  $(\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\alpha})\tau^{-1} = \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\beta}$  is a local axis for  $\beta$  and  $x\beta, x, x\tau^{-1}$  are in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\beta}$ . Now

$$x\beta = x\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = x\alpha, \text{ so } x\alpha\tau = x\tau\alpha^{-1} = y\alpha^{-2}.$$

Apply  $\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1} = \tau^{-1}\alpha\tau$  to  $y\alpha^{-1}$ :

$$(y\alpha^{-1})\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1} = y\beta\alpha^{m-1} = (y\alpha^{-1})\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = (x\tau)\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = x\alpha\tau = y\alpha^{-2}.$$

The conclusion is  $y\beta = y\alpha^{-m-1}$  and it is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$ . Now  $y$  is not in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\beta}$  and the bridge from  $y$  to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\beta}$  is  $[y, x]$ , so the bridge from  $y\beta$  to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\beta}$  is  $[y\beta, x\beta] = [y\alpha^{-m-1}, x\alpha]$ . Therefore  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$  and  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\beta}$  split away from each other in  $x\alpha = x\beta$ , or

$$\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\alpha} \cap \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\beta} = [x, x\alpha] = [x, x\beta].$$

The homeomorphism  $\tau$  conjugates the action of  $\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$  to the action of  $\beta$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\beta}$  (see Figure 6). Now apply  $\alpha\tau\alpha^{-m} = \tau\gamma\beta$  to  $x$ :

$$(x\alpha\tau)\alpha^{-m} = (y\alpha^{-2})\alpha^{-m} = y\alpha^{-2-m} = x\tau\gamma\beta.$$

As  $x\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\beta}$ , then  $x\alpha\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$  and it follows that  $x\tau\gamma\beta$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$ . If  $x\tau\gamma \leq x\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_{\kappa}$ , then the bridge from  $x\tau\gamma$  to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\beta}$  is  $[x\tau\gamma, x\tau^{-1}]$  and so the bridge from  $x\tau\gamma\beta$  to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\beta}$  is  $[x\tau\gamma\beta, x\tau^{-1}\beta]$ . But  $x\tau^{-1}\beta = x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  and

$$x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} < y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = x \quad \text{in } \mathcal{A}_{\kappa}.$$

This would imply  $x\tau\gamma\beta$  is not in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$ , contradiction. Hence  $x\gamma\tau \geq x\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_{\kappa}$ . Notice

$$x\beta^{-1} = x\tau\alpha\tau^{-1} = y\tau^{-1} \in (x\tau^{-1}, x).$$

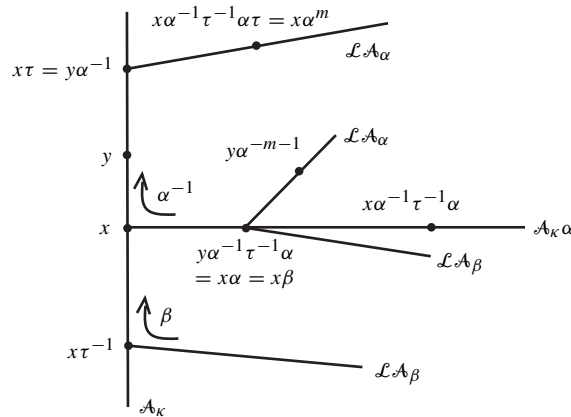


Figure 6. Situation I, the hard case.

If  $x\tau\gamma$  is in  $[x\tau^{-1}, x\beta^{-1})$  then  $x\tau\gamma\beta$  is in  $[x\tau^{-1}\beta, x)$  and not in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  either, contradiction again. Therefore  $x\tau\gamma$  is in  $[x\beta^{-1}, x]$ . The case  $x\tau\gamma = x$  can only occur when  $p = q = 1$ . This case can also be ruled out by a further argument, but as we are mainly interested in  $|p - 2q| = 1$  we assume here that  $p > q$ . Then  $x\tau\gamma$  is in  $[x\beta^{-1}, x)$  and  $x\tau\gamma\beta$  is in  $[x, x\beta)$ . We conclude that

$$y\alpha^{-2-m} \in [x, x\alpha).$$

*Claim.*  $y\tau\gamma\beta$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ .

If  $y\tau\gamma \geq x$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ , then  $x \leq y\tau\gamma \leq y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . So  $y\tau\gamma\beta$  is in  $[x\beta, y\beta]$  or

$$y\tau\gamma\beta \in [x\alpha, y\alpha^{-m-1}] \subset \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha.$$

Notice  $x\tau\gamma\beta \in \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . If on the other hand  $y\tau\gamma < x$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ , then  $x\tau\gamma < y\tau\gamma < x$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ , and

$$y\tau\gamma\beta \in (x\tau\gamma\beta, x\beta) = (x\tau\gamma\beta, x\alpha) \subset \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$$

and again  $y\tau\gamma\beta$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ .

Therefore the claim is proved.

It now follows that  $y\tau\gamma\beta\alpha^m = y\alpha\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Here  $y\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  and  $y\alpha <_\alpha y$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . If  $y\alpha >_\alpha x$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ , then  $y\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  and  $y\alpha > x$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  as well. Then  $y\alpha\tau > x\tau = y\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  and  $y\alpha\tau$  is not in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  contradiction.

Therefore  $y\alpha \leq_\alpha x$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  and so  $y\alpha$  is in  $[x, x\alpha)$ . But  $y\alpha^{-2-m} \in [x, x\alpha)$ . Since  $y$  is in a local axis for  $\alpha$  it follows that

$$y\alpha = y\alpha^{-2-m}, \text{ or } m = -3.$$

Since we are assuming  $m < -3$  this rules out this case as well.

This finishes the analysis of situation I and completes the analysis of the situation that orders  $<$  and  $<_\alpha$  agree on  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha$ . This ends case A.2.1.

**Case A.2.2.** The orders  $<$  and  $<_\alpha$  disagree on  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha$ .

Notice this is equivalent to  $y\alpha^{-1} < x\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . Again use  $u = \alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = \gamma\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha$ . Then

$$\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = (\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \alpha^{-1} \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa) \tau^{-1} = (\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha) \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}.$$

There are the following possibilities:

1) If  $x\tau > y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ , then  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha$  is empty and the bridge from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha$  is  $[x\tau, y]$ . Therefore  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = \emptyset$  and the bridge from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  is  $[x\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}, y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}]$ , see Figure 7 (a). Notice that

$$\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa u = (\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau) \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1} = [x\tau, y\tau] \alpha^{-1} \tau^{-1}.$$

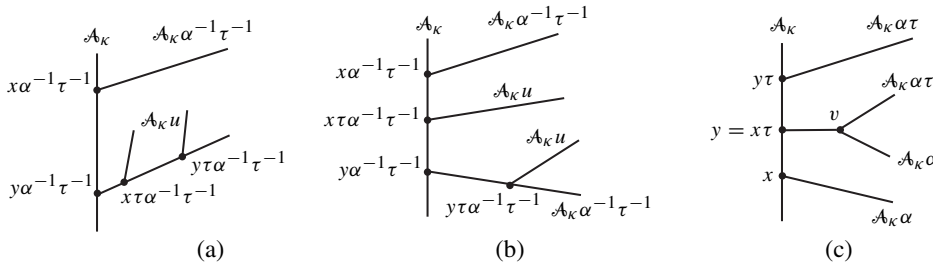


Figure 7. The orientation reversing situation, (a)  $x\tau > y$ , (b)  $x\tau < y$ , (c)  $x\tau = y$ .

2) If  $x\tau < y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ , then  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha = [x\tau, y]$ . Hence

$$\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \alpha^{-1} \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = [y\alpha^{-1}, x\tau\alpha^{-1}],$$

where the first endpoint is smaller than the second in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . Finally

$$\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = [y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}, x\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}]$$

and the orders  $<$ ,  $<_u$  agree on  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa$ , see Figure 7 (b), because  $y\alpha^{-1} < x\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  and their images under  $u$  satisfy  $y\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} <_u x\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u$ .

3) Finally if  $x\tau = y$ , then  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha = [y, v]$ , where  $v \leq_\alpha y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha$ . It follows that the intersection  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \alpha \tau \alpha^{-1} \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = [v\alpha^{-1}, y\alpha^{-1}]$ , the first point precedes in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . And then

$$\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = [v\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}, y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}] = [t, y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}].$$

Here if  $t$  is not  $y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  then  $<$  and  $<_u$  disagree on  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa$ , because  $y\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \leq v\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ .

Now use  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = (\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1})\alpha$ . Here  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1} \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = [y\alpha^{-1}, x\alpha^{-1}]$  the first term precedes in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . Again there are 3 possibilities

1') If  $x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} < y\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  then  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1} = \emptyset$  and the bridge from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1}$  is  $[x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}, y\alpha^{-1}]$ . Hence  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = \emptyset$  and the bridge from  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  is  $[x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha, y]$ , see Figure 8 (a).

2') If  $x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} > y\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ , then  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1} = [y\alpha^{-1}, x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}]$  and hence

$$\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = [x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha, y]$$

and the orders  $<$  and  $<_u$  agree on  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa u$ , because  $x < y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  and  $x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha <_u y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u$ , see Figure 8 (b).

3') If  $x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = y\alpha^{-1}$ , then  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha^{-1} = [c, y\alpha^{-1}]$  and  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = [y, z]$  where  $z = c\alpha$ . If  $z$  is not equal to  $y$ , then the orders  $<$  and  $<_u$  disagree on  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa$ .

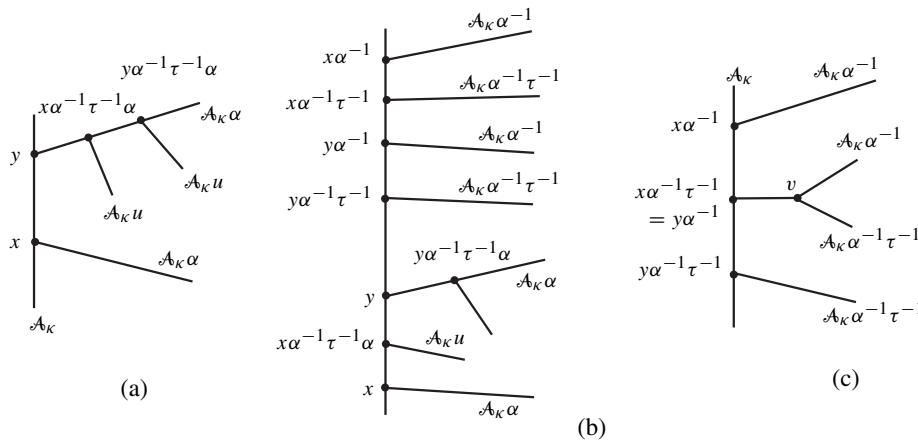


Figure 8. Using  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u = \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$ : (a)  $x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} < y\alpha^{-1}$ , (b)  $x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} > y\alpha^{-1}$ , (c)  $x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = y\alpha^{-1}$ .

Notice that both pairs of the three alternatives are all mutually exclusive. We match them and obtain three possible situations:

I.  $x\tau > y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ ,  $x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} < y\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  and

$$\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = \emptyset, \quad [y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}, x\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}] = [y, x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha].$$

II.  $x\tau < y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ ,  $x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} > y\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ ,

$$\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = [y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}, x\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}] = [x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha, y]$$

and the orders  $<$  and  $<_u$  agree on  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa$ .

III.  $x\tau = y$ ,  $x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = y\alpha^{-1}$  and

$$\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = [y, z] = [t, y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}].$$

If  $z$  is not  $y$  then the orders  $<$ ,  $<_u$  disagree on  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa$ .

We analyse each case in turn:

**Situation II.** Here  $x\tau < y$ ,  $x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} > y\alpha^{-1}$  and

$$y = x\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}, \quad y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha.$$

Suppose first that  $[y\alpha^{-1}, x\alpha^{-1}] \cap [x, y] = \emptyset$ . Since  $y\tau = x\tau\alpha^{-1}$ , then  $[y\alpha^{-1}, x\alpha^{-1}]$  is contained in the set of points  $> y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ .

In addition  $y\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha - \mathcal{A}_\kappa$  and  $y <_\alpha y\alpha$ . Hence  $y$  is in  $(y\alpha^{-1}, y\alpha)$ , producing a local axis  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  of  $\alpha$  which contains  $y$ . Now use  $\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = \alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^{m-1}$  applied to  $x\alpha^{-1}$ :

$$x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = x\alpha^{-1}\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^{m-1} = x\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^{m-1}.$$

Substitute  $x\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = y$  in the last term and  $x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha = y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  in the first term to get

$$(y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1})\tau = y\alpha^{-1} = y\alpha^{m-1}$$

or  $y = y\alpha^m$ . This is impossible because  $y$  is in a local axis of  $\alpha$  and  $m$  is not zero.

From now on in situation II suppose that  $[y\alpha^{-1}, x\alpha^{-1}] \cap [x, y]$  is not empty. Since  $x\tau\alpha^{-1} = y\tau > y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ , then  $x\alpha^{-1} > x\tau\alpha^{-1} > y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . It follows that  $y\alpha^{-1} \leq y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ .

Suppose first that  $y\alpha^{-1} < y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . Here  $x, y\alpha^{-1}, y, x\alpha^{-1}$  are all in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  which is a line. In addition  $[x, y]\alpha^{-1}$  is a subset of  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  and  $y\alpha^{-1} < y < x\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  and  $x < y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . It follows that there is  $r$  in  $[y\alpha^{-1}, y] \cap [x, y]$  which is fixed by  $\alpha$ . Either  $r$  is equal to  $y$  or  $r < y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . Let  $\mathcal{U}_1$  (respectively  $\mathcal{U}_2$ ) be the component of  $T - \{r\}$  containing  $r\tau$  (respectively  $r\tau^{-1}$ ). Since

$$x\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_1, \quad x \in \mathcal{U}_2 \quad \text{then} \quad \mathcal{U}_1\alpha = \mathcal{U}_2.$$

If  $r < y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  then also we have  $\mathcal{U}_2\alpha = \mathcal{U}_1$ . Otherwise  $\mathcal{U}_2\alpha = \mathcal{U}_3$  which is another component of  $T - \{r\}$  which is not  $\mathcal{U}_1, \mathcal{U}_2$ . We will rule out this case, but the result will be used later on as well, so we state it in more generality:

**Lemma 5.2.** *Let  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  be a local axis for  $\kappa$ . Let  $r$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  which is fixed by  $\alpha$ . Let  $\mathcal{U}_1$  (respectively  $\mathcal{U}_2$ ) be the component of  $T - \{r\}$  containing  $r\tau$  (respectively  $r\tau^{-1}$ ). Then  $\mathcal{U}_1\alpha$  is not  $\mathcal{U}_2$  and  $\mathcal{U}_2\alpha$  is not  $\mathcal{U}_1$ .*

*Proof.* The proof is as follows: suppose that either  $\mathcal{U}_1\alpha = \mathcal{U}_2$  or  $\mathcal{U}_2\alpha = \mathcal{U}_1$  and arrive at a contradiction.

First assume that  $\mathcal{U}_1\alpha = \mathcal{U}_2$ . Either  $\mathcal{U}_2\alpha = \mathcal{U}_1$  or  $\mathcal{U}_2\alpha$  is another component  $\mathcal{U}_3$  of  $T - \{u\}$ .

Let  $\mathcal{V}_i = \mathcal{U}_i\tau^{-1}$ . Since  $\mathcal{V}_1\beta = \mathcal{V}_1\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = \mathcal{U}_1\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \neq \mathcal{V}_1$ , we have that  $\mathcal{V}_1\beta$  is contained in  $\mathcal{U}_2$ . Therefore  $r\beta$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2$  and  $r\beta\alpha^{m-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2\alpha^{m-1}$ . Also

$$r\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = r\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1} = r\beta\alpha^{m-1}.$$

As  $r\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_2$  then  $r\tau^{-1}\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2\alpha$ , which is either  $\mathcal{U}_1$  or  $\mathcal{U}_3$ . Therefore  $r\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau$  is either in  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau \subset \mathcal{U}_1$  or in  $\mathcal{U}_3\tau$ , again a subset of  $\mathcal{U}_1$ . So  $r\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{U}_1$ . Therefore  $\mathcal{U}_2\alpha^{m-1} \cap \mathcal{U}_1 \neq \emptyset$ . But both are components of  $T - \{r\}$ , because  $r\alpha = r$ , so it follows that they are equal. As  $\mathcal{U}_2 = \mathcal{U}_1\alpha$  then

$$\mathcal{U}_1\alpha\alpha^{m-1} = \mathcal{U}_1, \text{ or } \mathcal{U}_1\alpha^m = \mathcal{U}_1, \mathcal{U}_2\alpha^m = \mathcal{U}_2, \mathcal{U}_3\alpha^m = \mathcal{U}_3 \text{ if needed.}$$

In case  $r \neq y$  this immediately implies  $m$  even.

Now use  $r\tau\gamma\beta\alpha^m = r\alpha\tau = r\tau \in \mathcal{U}_1$ . Therefore  $r\tau\gamma\beta \in \mathcal{U}_1\alpha^m = \mathcal{U}_1$ . It follows that

$$r\tau^{-1} < r < r\tau\gamma\beta;$$

recall this means  $r$  separates  $r\tau^{-1}$  from  $r\tau\gamma\beta$ . Applying  $\beta^{-1}$  one gets

$$r\tau^{-1} < r\beta^{-1} < r\tau\gamma. \tag{*}$$

Use  $r\beta^{-1} = r\tau\alpha\tau^{-1}$ :

$$r\tau \in \mathcal{U}_1 \Rightarrow r\tau\alpha \in \mathcal{U}_2, r\beta^{-1} = r\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{V}_2.$$

As  $r\tau^{-1}$  is an accumulation point of  $\mathcal{V}_2$ , equation (\*) above implies that  $r\tau\gamma$  is in  $\mathcal{V}_2$  or  $r\tau\gamma < r\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ , which immediately implies  $p > 2q$ .

As in the  $\mathbb{R}$ -covered case, look at  $r\tau\alpha$ . If  $r\tau\alpha$  is not in  $\mathcal{V}_2$ , then  $r\tau\alpha\tau \notin \mathcal{U}_2$ , and hence

$$r\tau\alpha\tau = (r\tau^2)\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = (r\tau^2)\gamma\beta\alpha^m \notin \mathcal{U}_2 \text{ and } r\tau\gamma\beta \notin \mathcal{U}_2.$$

So  $r\tau^{-1} < r \leq r\tau^2\gamma\beta$  and  $r\tau^2\gamma \leq r\beta^{-1} < r\tau^{-1}$ . As  $r\beta^{-1} = r\tau\alpha\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{V}_2$ , then

$$r\tau^2\gamma \in \mathcal{V}_2, \text{ so } r\tau^2\gamma < r\tau^{-1} \text{ in } \mathcal{A}_\kappa.$$

As seen before this implies  $p > 3q$ , which is disallowed and finishes this case.

If  $r\tau\alpha \in \mathcal{V}_2$  then  $r\beta^{-1} \in \mathcal{V}_2\tau^{-1}$ . By (\*)  $r\tau^{-1} < r\beta^{-1} < r\tau\gamma$ , so

$$r\tau\gamma \in \mathcal{V}_2\tau^{-1} \Rightarrow r\tau\gamma < r\tau^{-2} \text{ in } \mathcal{A}_\kappa.$$

As seen before this also implies  $p > 3q$ , contradiction.

This finishes the analysis of the case  $\mathcal{U}_1\alpha = \mathcal{U}_2$ .

Now suppose that  $\mathcal{U}_2\alpha = \mathcal{U}_1$ . If  $\mathcal{U}_1\alpha = \mathcal{U}_2$ , then this is taken care by the previous situation. So now assume  $\mathcal{U}_1\alpha = \mathcal{U}_3$  which is not  $\mathcal{U}_1$  or  $\mathcal{U}_2$ . As before assume  $\mathcal{V}_i = \mathcal{U}_i\tau^{-1}$ .

Here use  $r\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = r\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1} = r\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^{m-1}$ . First

$$r\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_2 \Rightarrow r\tau^{-1}\alpha \in \mathcal{U}_2\alpha = \mathcal{U}_1 \Rightarrow r\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{U}_1.$$

On the other hand

$$\begin{aligned} r\tau \in \mathcal{U}_1 &\Rightarrow r\tau\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_1\alpha^{-1} = \mathcal{U}_2 \Rightarrow r\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_2\tau^{-1} \subset \mathcal{U}_2 \\ &\Rightarrow r\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^{m-1} \in \mathcal{U}_2\alpha^{m-1}. \end{aligned}$$

From which we conclude that  $\mathcal{U}_2\alpha^{m-1} = \mathcal{U}_1 = \mathcal{U}_2\alpha$ .

Now use  $r\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = r\gamma\beta\alpha^m$ . The left side is in  $\mathcal{U}_1 = \mathcal{U}_2\alpha$ . Then

$$r\gamma\beta \in \mathcal{U}_1\alpha^{-m} = \mathcal{U}_2\alpha^{-1} = \mathcal{U}_3 \subset \mathcal{V}_1.$$

So  $r\gamma \in \mathcal{V}_1\beta^{-1} = \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1}\beta^{-1} = \mathcal{U}_1\alpha\tau = \mathcal{V}_3$ .

The fact that  $\mathcal{U}_2\alpha^{-1}$  is not  $\mathcal{U}_1$  implies that  $\mathcal{V}_2\beta$  is not  $\mathcal{V}_1$ , hence  $\mathcal{V}_2\beta$  is contained in  $\mathcal{U}_2$ . We know that  $r\gamma$  is  $\leq r\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  so it is either in  $\mathcal{V}_2$  or is equal to  $r\tau^{-1}$ . Hence  $r\gamma\beta$  is either  $r\tau^{-1}$  or is in  $\mathcal{V}_2\beta$  – in either case it is in  $\mathcal{U}_2$ . Finally  $r\gamma\beta\alpha^m$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2\alpha^m$  which must be  $\mathcal{U}_1$ . But then  $\mathcal{U}_2\alpha^m = \mathcal{U}_2\alpha^{m-1}$ , contradiction.

This finishes the analysis of the case  $\mathcal{U}_2\alpha = \mathcal{U}_1$  and so finishes the proof of Lemma 5.2.  $\square$

This finishes the analysis of situation II.

**Situation I.** In this case  $x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} < y\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  and  $y < x\tau$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . In addition

$$y\tau = y\alpha^{-1}, \quad x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha = x\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}. \quad (*)$$

Here  $x\alpha^{-1} > y\alpha^{-1} = y\tau$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$  (orientation reversing case) so  $x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} > y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . Therefore  $x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \in (y, y\alpha^{-1})$ . Also  $x\tau < y\tau = y\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ , so one concludes

$$x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}, \quad x\tau \in (y, y\alpha^{-1}).$$

On the other hand since  $y\alpha^{-1} = y\tau$ , one has  $y < y\alpha^{-1} < x\alpha^{-1}$ , so  $y\alpha < y < x$  and  $y\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha - \mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . It follows that  $y\alpha^{-1} < y < y\alpha$  and  $y$  is in a local axis  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$



for  $\alpha$ . This implies that the translates  $[y\alpha^i, y\alpha^{i+1})$  are all disjoint (as  $i$  varies in  $\mathbb{Z}$ ). Use the relation  $\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = \alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^{m-1}$  in the form

$$\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau\alpha^{1-m} = \tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$$

applied to  $x$  to get

$$(x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha)\tau\alpha^{1-m} = x\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}. \tag{**}$$

Now apply the second equality of (\*) to *both* sides of (\*\*) to get

$$(x\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1})\tau\alpha^{1-m} = x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha \quad \text{or} \quad (x\tau)\alpha^{-m} = (x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1})\alpha.$$

But  $x\tau \in (y, y\alpha^{-1})$ , so  $x\tau\alpha^{-m} \in (y, y\alpha^{-1})\alpha^{-m}$ . Similarly  $x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha$  is in  $(y, y\alpha^{-1})\alpha$ . Since they are equal then  $-m = 1$  or  $m = -1$ , impossible.

**Situation III.** Here  $x\tau = y, x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = y\alpha^{-1}$  and

$$\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = [y, z] = [t, y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}]$$

and if  $t \neq y$ , then  $<, <_u$  disagree on  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa$ .

Notice that  $y \leq z = y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  so  $y < y\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ , and  $y\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa - \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha$ . Also  $y\tau \leq y\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . Now

$$y < y\alpha^{-1} < x\alpha^{-1} \Rightarrow x < y < y\alpha, \quad \text{all points in } \mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha.$$

Hence  $y\alpha <_\alpha y$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha$  and  $y\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa\alpha - \mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . Hence  $y$  is in  $(y\alpha^{-1}, y\alpha)$  and there is a local axis  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  of  $\alpha$  with  $y$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Consider the relation  $\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = \alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$ . Substitute  $\beta = \tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  and rearrange the terms to get  $\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha = \tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^{m-1}\tau^{-1}$ . Now apply it to  $x$ :

$$y = x\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha = x\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^{m-1}\tau^{-1},$$

or  $y\tau\alpha^{1-m} = y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$ . Now  $y\tau \in [y, y\alpha^{-1}]$ , so  $y\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  and

$$y\tau\alpha^{1-m} \in [y\alpha^{1-m}, y\alpha^{-m}],$$

so  $y\tau\alpha^{1-m}$  is not in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ . But  $y\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa$ , contradiction.

This finishes the analysis of  $\mathcal{A}_\kappa u \cap \mathcal{A}_\kappa = [x, y]$  with  $x$  not equal  $y$ . Consequently this finishes the analysis of Case A,  $\tau$  acts freely, which we now proved cannot happen.

**6. Case B:  $\tau$  has a fixed point,  $\alpha$  acts freely**

Here  $\alpha$  has an (actual) axis  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  and so does  $\beta$  with axis  $\mathcal{A}_\beta = \mathcal{A}_\alpha\tau^{-1}$ . Let  $\text{Fix}(\tau)$  be the set of fixed points of  $\tau$ . As usual there are various possibilities. This case is very interesting because the topology of the manifold  $M_{p/q}$  will play a key role.

Recall that if  $x$  is a point not in a connected set  $B$  of the tree  $T$ , then the segment  $[x, u]$  is the bridge from  $x$  to  $B$  if the subsegment  $[x, u]$  does not intersect  $B$  and if  $u$  is either in  $B$  or is an accumulation point of  $B$ . Again the important fact is that the bridge from  $x$  to  $B$  is unique: it is the only embedded path from  $x$  to  $B$  because  $T$  is a tree. As in case A this will be explored here. If  $u$  is in  $B$  we say that  $x$  bridges to  $u$  in  $B$ .

We say that a point  $a$  is an ideal point of a local axis  $l$  if  $a$  is not in  $l$  but is an accumulation point of  $l$ . Obviously this implies that  $l$  is not properly embedded in  $T$  in the side accumulating to  $a$ .

There are two main cases depending on whether  $\text{Fix}(\tau)$  intersects  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  or not.

**Case B.1.**  $\text{Fix}(\tau) \cap \mathcal{A}_\alpha = \emptyset$ .

Then  $\kappa$  also has a fixed point  $s$ . Choose  $s$  with  $s\kappa = s$  and  $s$  closest to  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ , that is, the bridge  $[s, c]$  from  $s$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  has no other fixed point of  $\kappa$ . Let  $z$  in  $[s, c]$  fixed by  $\tau$  and closest to  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ , that is, the bridge  $[z, c]$  from  $z$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  has no other fixed point of  $\tau$  besides  $z$ . A priori we do not know whether  $z$  is equal to  $s$  or not. Let  $\mathcal{U}$  be the component of  $T - \{z\}$  containing  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ .

Then  $\mathcal{A}_\beta$  is a subset of  $\mathcal{U}\tau$  and  $z$  bridges to  $c\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\beta$ .

**Case B.1.1.** Suppose  $\mathcal{U}\tau \neq \mathcal{U}$ .

Then  $\mathcal{U}\tau^{-1} \neq \mathcal{U}$  as well. Apply  $\alpha\tau = \tau\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$  to  $z$ : the point  $z$  bridges to  $c$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ , so  $z\alpha$  bridges to  $c\alpha$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . As  $c\alpha$  is not  $c$  then  $z\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ , so  $z\alpha\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{U}\tau$ , see Figure 9(a). On the other hand  $z\tau\alpha = z\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$  and hence  $z$  separates it from  $\mathcal{A}_\beta$ . It follows that  $z\alpha$  also bridges to  $c\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\beta$ . Then

$$z\alpha\beta = z\tau\alpha\beta \text{ bridges to } c\tau^{-1}\beta \text{ in } \mathcal{A}_\beta \text{ and } c\tau^{-1}\beta \neq c\tau^{-1}, \text{ so } z\tau\alpha\beta \in \mathcal{U}\tau^{-1}.$$

Therefore  $z\tau\alpha\beta$  bridges to  $c$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ , so  $z\tau\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$  bridges to  $c\alpha^{m-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . This implies  $z\tau\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ , impossible since it is equal to  $z\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{U}\tau$ .

We conclude that  $\mathcal{U}\tau = \mathcal{U}$ , which will be assumed from now on in this proof.

Choose a prong  $\eta$  at  $z$  which is a subset of  $[z, c]$ . This prong is associated to the component  $\mathcal{U}$  of  $T - \{z\}$ , hence the prong  $\eta\tau$  also is associated to the component  $\mathcal{U} = \mathcal{U}\tau$  and  $\eta \cap \eta\tau$  is not just  $z$ . Let  $e$  be another point in the intersection. Then  $e\tau^{-1}, e$  are both in  $\eta$  and  $e\tau^{-1}$  is not equal  $e$  – by choice of  $z$  as the fixed point of  $\tau$  in  $[z, c]$  closest to  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . So either  $e$  is in  $[z, e\tau)$  or  $e\tau$  is in  $[z, e)$ . In the first case (say) apply  $\tau$  to get  $e\tau$  is in  $[z, e\tau^2)$  and it now follows that  $e < e\tau < e\tau^2$ . The same alignment of points happens in the second case. We conclude that there is a local axis  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  for  $\tau$ , with  $e$  in the local axis.

This construction of a local axis is crucial in case B and also in case C of the proof.

**Conclusion.** If  $\mathcal{U}\tau = \mathcal{U}$  and there is no fixed point of  $\tau$  in  $(z, w]$ , then there is a local axis  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  of  $\tau$  contained in  $\mathcal{U}$  with one ideal point  $z$ .

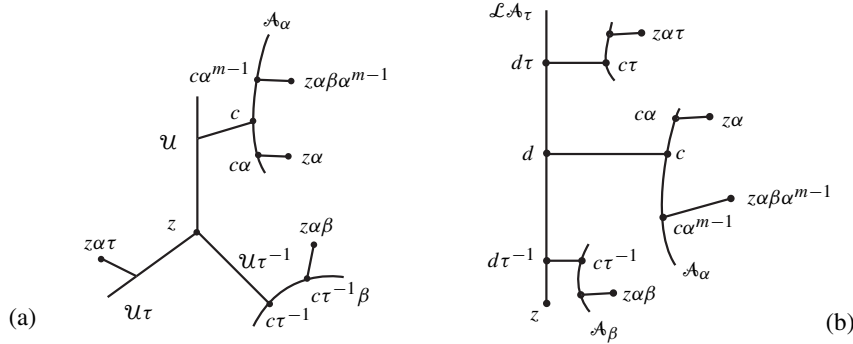


Figure 9. (a) The case  $\mathcal{U}\tau \neq \mathcal{U}$ , (b) the case  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\alpha = \emptyset$ .

**Case B.1.2.** Suppose that  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\alpha$  is at most one point.

Let  $[d, c]$  be the bridge from  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  – here  $d = c$  if  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\alpha$  is a single point. We do the proof for  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\alpha = \emptyset$ , the case of single point intersection being entirely similar. Once more we use

$$z\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = z\alpha\tau = z\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}.$$

Here  $z\alpha$  bridges to  $c\alpha$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  and bridges to  $c\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\beta$ , see Figure 9 (b). Therefore  $z\alpha\beta$  bridges to  $c\tau^{-1}\beta$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\beta$  and so  $z\alpha\beta$  bridges to  $c$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Therefore  $z\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$  bridges to  $c\alpha^{m-1}$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ .

On the other hand notice that  $z\alpha$  bridges to  $d$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and so  $z\alpha\tau$  bridges to  $d\tau$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and consequently  $z\alpha\tau$  bridges to  $c$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . This contradicts the equality above. This finishes the proof of case B.1.2.

We conclude that  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\alpha$  is more than one point. Since  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  is properly embedded in  $T$  and  $z$  is not in  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  then there is  $a$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\alpha$  closest to  $z$ . From now on in case B.1 let  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\alpha = [a, b]$ , with  $a \neq z$  and  $a$  closest to  $z$ . By an abuse of notation  $b$  can be  $+\infty$ , meaning the intersection is a ray in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . Put an order  $<$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  so that  $a < b$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . Also let  $<_\alpha$  be the order in  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  with  $a <_\alpha b$ .

From now on in case B.1 the proof will depend on whether  $\mathcal{U}\gamma$  is equal to  $\mathcal{U}$  or not. The arguments here are also very similar to what will be needed for case C, therefore we will make the arguments in more generality so that they can be used in case C, namely when  $\alpha$  has a fixed point but has a local axis with certain properties. We first specify the conditions under which the analysis works.

**Conditions.** Consider two conditions:

**Condition F.**  $\tau$  has a fixed point  $z$ ,  $\alpha$  acts freely and  $z$  is not in the axis  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Let  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  be in the component  $\mathcal{U}$  of  $T - \{z\}$ . There is a fixed point  $s$  of  $\kappa$  so that  $s$  is either  $z$

or  $z$  separates  $s$  from  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Let  $[s, c]$  be the bridge from  $s$  to  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Then  $(s, c]$  has no fixed point of  $\kappa$  and  $(z, c]$  has no fixed point of  $\tau$ . Also  $\mathcal{U}\tau = \mathcal{U}$  and there is a local axis  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  of  $\tau$  in  $\mathcal{U}$  with ideal point  $z$ . Finally  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau \cap \mathcal{A}_\alpha = [a, b]$  where  $a \neq z$  and  $a$  is in  $(z, b)$ .

**Notation.** Given  $u, v$  distinct in  $T$  let  $T_u(v)$  be the component of  $T - \{u\}$  containing  $v$ .

**Condition N.**  $\tau$  has a fixed point  $z$ ;  $\kappa$  has a fixed point  $s$  and  $\alpha$  has a fixed point  $w$  so that  $(s, w)$  has no fixed point of either  $\kappa$  or  $\alpha$ . In addition either  $z = s$  or  $z \in (s, w)$  and  $(z, w)$  has no fixed point of  $\tau$ . In addition let  $\mathcal{U}$  be  $T_z(w)$  and  $\mathcal{V}$  be  $T_w(z)$ . Then  $\mathcal{U}\tau = \mathcal{U}$  and  $\mathcal{V}\alpha = \mathcal{V}$ . There is a local axis  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  of  $\tau$  in  $\mathcal{U}$  with one ideal point  $z$  and a local axis  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  of  $\alpha$  in  $\mathcal{V}$  with ideal point  $w$ . The intersection of  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  and  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  is  $[a, b]$  where  $a$  is the closest point to  $z$  and  $b$  can be  $+\infty$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ .

Here condition F is for free action of  $\alpha$  (which is used here) and condition N is for non free action of  $\alpha$  (which is used in Case C). In either case the order  $<_\alpha$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  corresponds to  $a <_\alpha b$ . This implies the orders  $<, <_\alpha$  coincide in the intersection. Beware that here the order  $<_\alpha$  here is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  and not in  $(\mathcal{A}_\tau)\alpha$  as in case A.

**Caution.** An axis is also a local axis. For the sake of simplicity and to use it for case C, we will use the notation  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  even in the case of  $\alpha$  acting freely for the rest of the proof of case B.1. In case B.2, we will return to use the notation  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  for the axis of  $\alpha$ .

**Case B.1.3.**  $\mathcal{U}\gamma \neq \mathcal{U}$ .

**Claim.** Under these conditions  $\mathcal{U}\gamma \cap \mathcal{U}$  is empty.

Recall that  $\partial\mathcal{U} = z$  and  $z\tau = z$ . Notice we do not know a priori that  $z\gamma = z$ . If  $z\gamma = z$  then  $\gamma$  permutes the components of  $T - \{z\}$  so one has  $\mathcal{U}\gamma \cap \mathcal{U} = \emptyset$ . Suppose then that  $z\gamma$  is not  $z$ . Recall that there is a fixed point  $s$  of  $\kappa$  with  $z \in [s, w]$  – maybe  $s = z$ . If  $z\gamma \neq z$ , then

$$[s, z] \cap [s, z\gamma] = [s, t] \text{ with } t \in [s, z), \text{ hence } t \in (z, z\gamma).$$

In particular  $z$  is not equal to  $s$ . Notice  $t$  may be equal to  $s$ . Here  $z$  separates  $\mathcal{U}$  from  $s$ , hence  $z$  separates  $\mathcal{U}$  from  $t$ . Also  $z\gamma$  separates  $\mathcal{U}\gamma$  from  $s$ , hence  $z\gamma$  separates  $\mathcal{U}\gamma$  from  $t$ . It follows that  $t$  separates  $\mathcal{U}$  from  $\mathcal{U}\gamma$  and  $\mathcal{U} \cap \mathcal{U}\gamma = \emptyset$ . Also  $z$  separates  $\mathcal{U}$  from  $\mathcal{U}\gamma$  and so does  $z\gamma$ . This proves the claim.

**Situation I.** Suppose  $a\alpha <_\alpha a$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ .

**Situation I.1.** Suppose  $a\alpha^{-1} >_\alpha b$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ , see Figure 10 (a).

This implies that  $a\alpha$  is not in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ , see Figure 10 (a). This also implies  $b$  is finite. Notice that

$$z\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\tau = z\alpha^{-m}\beta^{-1}\gamma^{-1} = z\alpha^{-m}\tau\alpha\tau^{-1}\gamma^{-1}.$$

The point  $z$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $a$ . Hence  $z\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1} = z\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $a\alpha^{-1}$ , so  $z\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$  and  $z\alpha^{-1}\tau$  is also in  $\mathcal{U}$ , which is invariant under  $\tau$ . Since

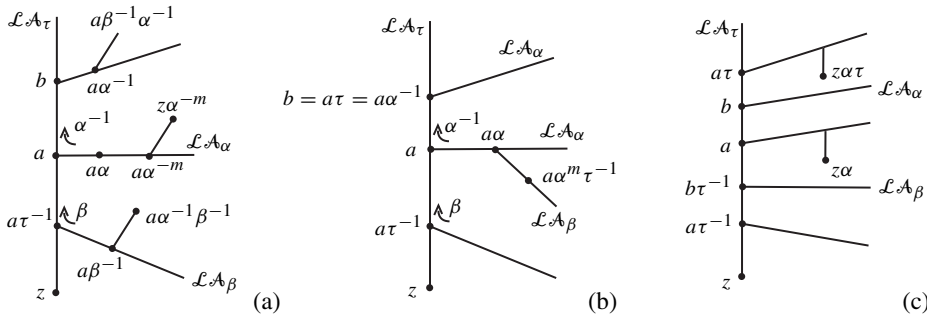


Figure 10. The case  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \cap \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau = [a, b]$ : (a) Case  $a\alpha <_\alpha a, b <_\alpha a\alpha^{-1}$ , (b) Case  $b = a\tau = a\alpha^{-1}$ , (c) Case  $a\tau > b$ .

$\mathcal{U}\gamma \cap \mathcal{U} = \emptyset$ , then

$z\alpha^{-m}\tau\alpha \notin \mathcal{U}$  and it bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $a \Rightarrow z\alpha^{-m}\tau$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $a\alpha^{-1}$

and hence bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $b$ . But  $z\alpha^{-m}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $a\alpha^{-m}$  so bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $a$ . So  $z\alpha^{-m}\tau$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $a\tau$ . This implies  $a\tau = b$  and also that  $\tau$  is increasing in  $(\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau, <)$ .

In addition

$$\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta = (\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha)\tau^{-1} \text{ so } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta \cap \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau = [a\tau^{-1}, a] = [a\tau^{-1}, b\tau^{-1}]$$

and  $a\beta^{-1} = b\alpha\tau^{-1}$  is not in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $a\tau^{-1}$ . So this point bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $a$  and  $a\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $a\alpha^{-1}$ . As a result  $a\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ .

Also  $a\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $b = a\tau$ . Hence it bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  in  $a$ . This implies that  $a\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  in  $a\beta^{-1}$  so again  $a\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ . Now  $(a\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1})\gamma = a\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$ . Which implies  $\mathcal{U}\gamma \cap \mathcal{U}$  is not empty. This contradicts the above claim.

Situation I.1 cannot happen.

**Situation I.2.** Suppose  $a\alpha^{-1} \leq_\alpha b$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ .

Similarly to the arguments in situation I.1,  $z\alpha^{-1}\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ , so  $z\alpha^{-m}\tau\alpha$  is not in  $\mathcal{U}$  so

$$z\alpha^{-m}\tau\alpha \text{ bridges to } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \text{ in } a, \quad z\alpha^{-m}\tau \text{ bridges to } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \text{ in } a\alpha^{-1}.$$

Also  $a\alpha^{-1} \leq_\alpha b$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ , hence  $a\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and  $a\alpha^{-1} \leq b$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  as well. On the other hand  $z\alpha^{-m}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $a$  so  $z\alpha^{-m}\tau$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $a\tau$ . From this it follows that  $a\tau \geq a\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . In particular  $\tau$  is increasing in  $(\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau, <)$ . There are two possibilities:

The first possibility is that  $a\alpha^{-1} \neq b$ . In this case  $z\alpha^{-m}\tau$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $a\alpha^{-1}$  which is in the interior of  $[a, b]$ , hence this point also bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $a\alpha^{-1}$ . It follows that

$$a\tau = a\alpha^{-1} \Rightarrow a\beta^{-1} = a\tau^{-1} \text{ bridges to } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \text{ in } a.$$

Then  $a\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $a\alpha^{-1}$  so is in  $\mathcal{U}$ . As before consider  $a\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$ . Here  $a\alpha^{-1}$  is either in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  or bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  in  $b\tau^{-1}$  (the top intersection of  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  with  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ ). If  $a\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  then  $a\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  so in  $\mathcal{U}$ , as above contradiction. If it bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  in  $b\tau^{-1}$  then  $a\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  in  $b\tau^{-1}\beta^{-1} = b\alpha\tau^{-1}$ . Since in this case

$$b\alpha > a \text{ in } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau, \text{ then } b\alpha\tau^{-1} > a\tau^{-1} \text{ in } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau \Rightarrow a\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} \in \mathcal{U},$$

again a contradiction.

The second possibility is that  $a\alpha^{-1} = b$ . Here we have to split further into two options:

Recall that  $a\tau \geq a\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . First consider the case that  $a\tau = a\alpha^{-1}$ , see Figure 10 (b). We have the equalities  $a\beta^{-1} = a\tau\alpha\tau^{-1} = a\tau^{-1}$ . Use

$$(a\alpha^m)\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\tau = a\alpha^m\alpha^{-m}\beta^{-1}\gamma^{-1} = a\beta^{-1}\gamma^{-1} = a\tau^{-1}\gamma^{-1} \notin \mathcal{U}.$$

Hence  $a\alpha^m\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  is not in  $\mathcal{U}$  and bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $a$ ,  $a\alpha^m\tau^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $a\alpha$ . But

$$a\alpha^m \in \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \Rightarrow a\alpha^m\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta \Rightarrow \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \cap \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta = [a, a\alpha],$$

see Figure 10 (b). Now evaluate  $\gamma^{-1} = \beta\alpha\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  on  $a\tau^{-1}$ :

$$(a\tau^{-1})\gamma^{-1} = (a\beta^{-1})\beta\alpha\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} = a\alpha\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}.$$

Notice that  $a\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  so  $a\alpha\beta^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$ . Either  $a\alpha\beta^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  and then  $a\alpha\beta\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \subset \mathcal{U}$  (contradiction) or

$a\alpha\beta^{-1} \notin \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  so bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $a$  and  $a\alpha\beta\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $a\alpha^{-1}$

and again this point is in  $\mathcal{U}$ . In either case  $\mathcal{U}\gamma \cap \mathcal{U} \neq \emptyset$ , contradiction.

The last option of the second possibility  $a\alpha^{-1} = b$  is that  $a\tau > b = a\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . Then

$$b\tau^{-1} = a\tau^{-1}\beta < a \text{ in } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau \Rightarrow \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \cap \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta = \emptyset,$$

see Figure 10 (c). Here use  $\alpha\tau = \tau\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$  applied to  $z$ : The point  $z\alpha$  bridges to  $a$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and  $z\alpha\tau$  bridges to  $a\tau$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . Since  $a\tau > b$ , then  $z\alpha\tau$  bridges to  $b = a\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ .

On the other hand  $z\alpha$  bridges to  $b\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{LA}_\beta$  hence  $z\alpha\beta$  bridges to  $b\tau^{-1}\beta$  in  $\mathcal{LA}_\beta$ , hence to  $a$  in  $\mathcal{LA}_\alpha$ . Finally  $z\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$  bridges to  $a\alpha^{m-1}$  in  $\mathcal{LA}_\alpha$ . Since  $m$  is not 0 this is a contradiction.

We conclude that situation I cannot happen.

**Situation II.**  $a\alpha^{-1} <_\alpha a$  in  $\mathcal{LA}_\alpha$ .

**Situation II.1.**  $a\alpha^{-m}$  is not in  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$ . Here use

$$z\alpha^{-1}\tau = z\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\tau = z\alpha^{-m}\tau\alpha\tau^{-1}\gamma^{-1}$$

is in  $\mathcal{U}$ , so  $z\alpha^{-m}\tau\alpha$  is not in  $\mathcal{U}$ . It bridges to  $\mathcal{LA}_\alpha$  in  $a$ , hence  $z\alpha^{-m}\tau$  bridges to  $\mathcal{LA}_\alpha$  in  $a\alpha^{-1}$  and hence bridges to  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$  in  $a$ . On the other hand  $z\alpha^{-m}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{LA}_\alpha$  in  $a\alpha^{-m}$ , so bridges to  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$  in  $b$ . It follows that  $z\alpha^{-m}\tau$  bridges to  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$  in  $b\tau$  which then must be  $a$ . So  $a < a\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$  and  $\tau$  is decreasing in  $(\mathcal{LA}_\tau, <)$ .

Notice  $\mathcal{LA}_\beta \cap \mathcal{LA}_\tau$  is equal to  $[a\tau^{-1}, b\tau^{-1}]$  and this intersects  $\mathcal{LA}_\alpha$  in  $a\tau^{-1} = b$ . Suppose first that  $a\alpha$  is not  $a\tau^{-1} = b$ . Here

$a\beta^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{LA}_\beta$  in  $a\tau^{-1}\beta^{-1}$ , so bridges to  $\mathcal{LA}_\alpha$  in  $a\tau^{-1}$ .

Then  $a\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{LA}_\alpha$  in  $a\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \neq a$ . It follows that  $a\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ .

On the other hand  $a\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{LA}_\beta$  in  $a\tau^{-1} = b$ , so  $a\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{LA}_\beta$  in  $b\beta^{-1}$  which is not  $b$  and it follows that  $a\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  is also in  $\mathcal{U}$ . As seen before this implies  $\mathcal{U}\gamma \cap \mathcal{U}$  is not empty, contradiction.

The second option in situation II.1 is that  $a\alpha = a\tau^{-1}$ , see Figure 11 (a).

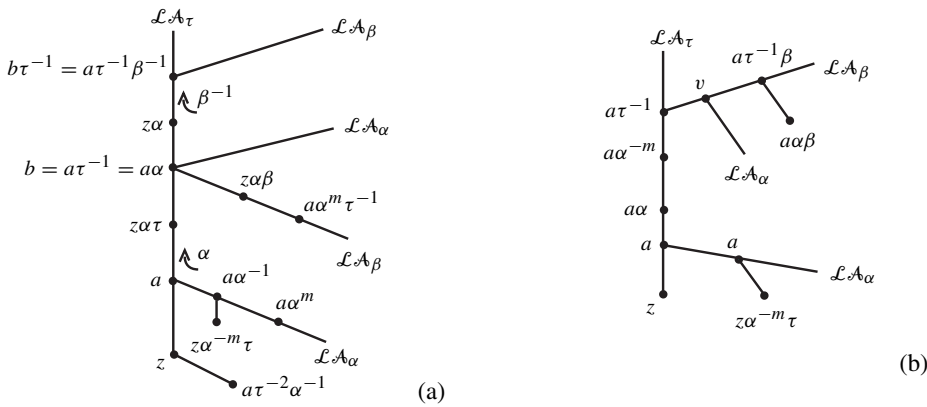


Figure 11. Case  $a\alpha^{-1} <_\alpha a$  in  $\mathcal{LA}_\alpha$ : (a) Picture when  $a\alpha^{-m} \notin \mathcal{LA}_\tau, a\alpha = a\tau^{-1}$ . (b) Picture when  $a\alpha^{-m} \in \mathcal{LA}_\tau, a\tau^{-1}\beta \notin \mathcal{LA}_\alpha$ .

Apply  $\alpha^{-m}\beta^{-1}\gamma^{-1} = \tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\tau$  to  $a\alpha^m$ . The left side becomes  $a\beta^{-1}\gamma^{-1}$ . Here

$$a\beta^{-1} \in \mathcal{U} \Rightarrow a\beta^{-1}\gamma^{-1} \notin \mathcal{U} \Rightarrow a\alpha^m\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \notin \mathcal{U}$$

and bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $a$ . It follows that  $a\alpha^m\tau^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $a\alpha = a\tau^{-1} = b$ . But  $a\alpha^m$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ , so  $a\alpha^m\tau^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$ . Consequently  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \cap \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta = a\tau^{-1} = b$ , see Figure 11 (a).

The point  $a\beta^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ , hence

$$a\beta^{-1}\gamma^{-1} = a\alpha\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} = a\tau^{-1}\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} = a\tau^{-2}\alpha^{-1}$$

is not in  $\mathcal{U}$ . Moreover, also  $a\beta^{-1}\gamma^{-1}$  is not equal to  $z$ , since otherwise some point near  $a\beta^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{U}$  will have image under  $\gamma$  in  $\mathcal{U}$ , which is disallowed. Then

$$z \in (a, a\tau^{-2}\alpha^{-1}) \Rightarrow z\alpha \in (a\alpha, a\tau^{-2}) = (a\tau^{-1}, a\tau^{-2}) \Rightarrow z\alpha\tau \in (a, a\tau^{-1}).$$

In particular  $z\alpha\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  and  $z\alpha\tau\alpha^{1-m}$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  as well. This point is equal to  $z\alpha\beta$ .

On the other hand

$$z\alpha \in (a\tau^{-1}, a\tau^{-2}) = (a\tau^{-1}, a\tau^{-1}\beta^{-1}) \Rightarrow z\alpha\beta \in (a\tau^{-1}, a\tau^{-1}\beta).$$

But then  $z\alpha\beta$  is not in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ , contradiction.

This finishes the analysis of situation II.1,  $a\alpha^{-m}$  is not in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ .

**Situation II.2.**  $a\alpha^{-m}$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ .

In particular  $a\alpha$  is in  $(a, b]$ . Here  $z\alpha^{-m}\beta^{-1}\gamma^{-1} = z\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ . As usual this implies  $z\alpha^{-m}\tau\alpha$  is not in  $\mathcal{U}$  and bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $a$  and  $z\alpha^{-m}\tau$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $a\alpha^{-1}$ , see Figure 11 (b); so  $z\alpha^{-m}\tau$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $a$ . So

$$z\alpha^{-m} \text{ bridges to } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau \text{ in } a\tau^{-1} \Rightarrow a\tau^{-1} > a \text{ in } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$$

and again  $\tau$  is decreasing in  $(\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau, <)$ . Notice  $z\alpha^{-m}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $a\alpha^{-m}$ . If  $a\alpha^{-m} <_\alpha b$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ , then  $z\alpha^{-m}$  also bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $a\alpha^{-m}$  and  $a\alpha^{-m} = a\tau^{-1}$ . If

$$a\alpha^{-m} = b \text{ then } z\alpha^{-m} \text{ bridges to } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau \text{ in a point } \geq a\alpha^{-m},$$

that is,  $a\tau^{-1} \geq a\alpha^{-m}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . In any case  $a\alpha^{-m} \leq a\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and  $a\alpha < a\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ .

Now compute  $a\gamma = a\alpha\beta\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$ . Here  $a\alpha$  is in  $[a, a\tau^{-1}]$  and bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  in  $a\tau^{-1}$ . Hence  $a\alpha\beta$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  in  $a\tau^{-1}\beta$ . There are two options: First if  $a\tau^{-1}\beta$  is not in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ , then  $a\alpha\beta$  bridges to a point  $v$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  and  $v \in (a, a\tau^{-1}\beta)$  – see Figure 11 (b). Here  $v$  could be in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . Also  $v \geq a\alpha^{-m}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Then

$$a\alpha\beta\alpha^{-1} \text{ bridges to a point } v\alpha^{-1} \text{ in } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \Rightarrow \text{it bridges a point } c \text{ in } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta,$$

where  $a\tau^{-1}\beta$  does not separate  $c$  from  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . It follows that  $a\gamma = a\alpha\beta\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  bridges to a point in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  which is not  $a\tau^{-1}$ , hence  $a\gamma$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ , contradiction.



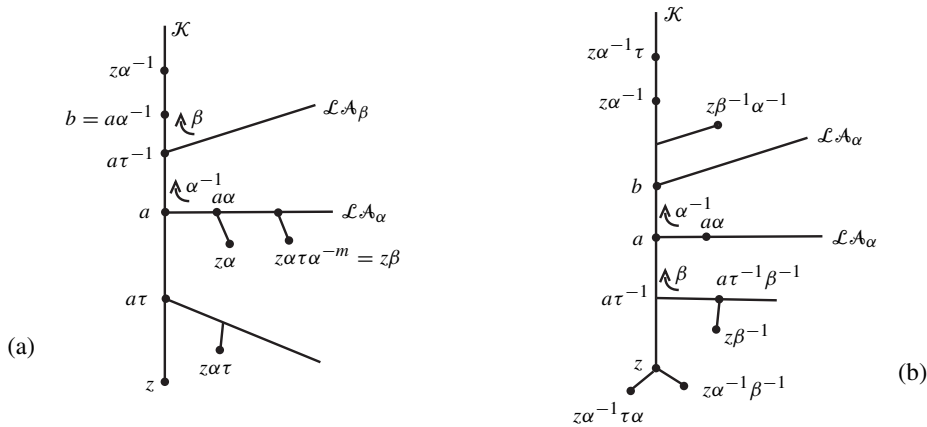


Figure 12. Analysing  $z\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{K}$ : (a) Picture when  $a\tau \in [z, a)$ . (b) Picture when  $a\tau^{-1} \in [z, a)$ .

The second option here is that  $a\tau^{-1}\beta$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Here  $a\tau^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Then consider  $a\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  which is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  and hence in  $\mathcal{U}$ . Then

$$(a\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1})\alpha\beta\alpha^{-1} = a\tau^{-1}\beta\alpha^{-1}$$

is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  and  $a\tau^{-1}\beta\alpha^{-1} <_\alpha a\tau^{-1}\beta$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Therefore

$$a\tau^{-1}\beta\alpha^{-1} \text{ bridges to a point in } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta \text{ contained in } (b\tau^{-1}, a\tau^{-1}\beta).$$

Apply  $\beta^{-1}$  – the resulting point bridges to a point in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  which is not  $a\tau^{-1}$ , hence  $(a\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1})\gamma$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ , again a contradiction.

This finishes the analysis of situation II. Hence this finishes the analysis of case B.1.3,  $\mathcal{U}\gamma$  is not equal to  $\mathcal{U}$ .

**Case B.1.4.** Suppose  $\mathcal{U}\gamma = \mathcal{U}$ .

Since the boundary  $\partial\mathcal{U}$  in  $T$  is the point  $z$  this implies that  $z\gamma = z$ . Since  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  is a prong at  $z$  it follows that  $(\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau)\gamma \cap \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  is not empty. Choose  $c\gamma$  in this intersection. So  $c, c\gamma$  are disjoint and in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . It follows that  $z, c, c\gamma$  are aligned (the particular order is not important) and  $c$  is in a local axis of  $\gamma$ . But  $c\gamma^{-q} = c\tau^p$  is also in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and it follows easily that the local axis is contained in and therefore equal to the local axis  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  of  $\tau$  so  $\gamma, \tau$  and hence  $\kappa$  leave  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  invariant. This sort of argument will be used from time to time from now on.

Here the ideal would be to apply the proof of case A, where  $\tau$  acted freely and  $\mathcal{A}_\tau$  was invariant by  $\gamma$  and  $\tau$ . We already have  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  invariant under  $\gamma$  and  $\tau$ , however  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  is not properly embedded in  $T$  – at least in the  $z$  direction. In order to apply the proof of case A, we analyse the relative positions of  $(\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau)\alpha, (\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau)\alpha\tau$  and so on.

In particular for that analysis to work we must have  $(\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau)\alpha$  contained in  $\mathcal{U}$  and so on. So first we do preparation work, showing all images of the local axis are in  $\mathcal{U}$  and then we can apply the proof of case A.

For simplicity of notation in case B.1.4 we do the following:  $\mathcal{K}$  will denote the local axis  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  which is contained in  $\mathcal{U}$  and has an ideal point  $z$ . Again as we want to use this in section C as well, we will consider a local axis  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  for  $\alpha$ . The key result is the following:

**Lemma 6.1.** *We have  $\mathcal{K}\alpha \subset \mathcal{U}$ ,  $\mathcal{K}\alpha^{-1} \subset \mathcal{U}$  and  $\mathcal{K}\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1} \subset \mathcal{U}$ .*

*Proof.* The proof will be done considering each problem in turn. When the problems do not occur we show after the lemma that we can use the proof of case A to deal with case B.1.4. We treat each problem in turn:

**Problem 1.** Is  $\mathcal{K}\alpha \subset \mathcal{U}$ ?

Suppose not. Then as  $a\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  contained in  $\mathcal{U}$  there is  $t$  in  $\mathcal{K}$  with  $t\alpha = z$  or  $z\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{K}$ , see Figure 13 (a). Here  $z$  bridges to  $a$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  so  $z\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $a\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . So  $z\alpha^{-1}$  can only be in  $\mathcal{K}$  if  $b$  is in  $(z, z\alpha^{-1})$  and  $a\alpha^{-1} = b$ . In particular  $a\alpha <_\alpha a$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ .

There are two possibilities depending on whether  $\tau$  is expanding away from  $z$  or not:

First suppose  $a\tau$  is in  $[z, a)$ , see Figure 12 (a). As  $z\alpha$  bridges to  $a$  in  $\mathcal{K}$  then  $z\alpha\tau$  bridges to  $a\tau$  in  $\mathcal{K}$  and bridges to  $a$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Then  $z\alpha\tau\alpha^{-m}$  bridges to  $a\alpha^{-m}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . The point  $z\alpha\tau\alpha^{-m}$  is equal to  $z\beta$  (because  $z\gamma = z$ ) and bridges to  $a$  in  $\mathcal{K}$  so bridges to  $a\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$ . But  $z$  also bridges to  $a\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$ , contradiction.

The second option is  $a\tau > a$  in  $\mathcal{K}$ , see Figure 12 (b). Here  $z\beta^{-1}$  bridges to  $a\tau^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  and so to  $a$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Hence

$$z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \text{ bridges to } a\alpha^{-1} \text{ in } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \Rightarrow z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}.$$

On the other hand  $z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} = z\alpha^{-1}\tau\alpha\tau^{-1}$ . Here

$$z\alpha^{-1}\tau \in \mathcal{K} \Rightarrow z\alpha^{-1} \in (z, z\alpha^{-1}\tau) \Rightarrow z\alpha^{-1}\tau\alpha \notin \mathcal{U} \Rightarrow z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} \notin \mathcal{U}.$$

But  $z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma = z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$ , leading to  $\mathcal{U}\gamma \neq \mathcal{U}$ , contradiction to case B.1.3.

So we obtain  $z\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}$  is impossible. Hence  $\mathcal{K}\alpha \subset \mathcal{U}$ . This shows that Problem 1 does not occur.

If  $\mathcal{K}\alpha$  intersects  $\mathcal{K}$  in at most one point we can use the analysis of Case A.1 to disallow it. To use that notice that  $\mathcal{K}$  is a local axis for  $\kappa$  and  $\mathcal{K}\alpha$  has to bridge to a point  $x$  in  $\mathcal{K}$  and not to  $z$ .

So assume from now on in case B.1.4 that  $\mathcal{K} \cap \mathcal{K}\alpha$  is more than one point.

Suppose for a moment that  $\mathcal{K}\alpha$  is contained in  $\mathcal{K}$ . Apply  $\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau\alpha^{-m} = \gamma\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  to  $\mathcal{K}$ . If  $\mathcal{K}\alpha$  is not equal to  $\mathcal{K}$  then the right side is strictly contained in  $\mathcal{K}$  and the

left side strictly contains it. Impossible. So the only possibility is that  $\mathcal{K}\alpha = \mathcal{K}$ . But that implies that  $\mathcal{K}$  is left invariant by the whole group and this reduces to case R – the tree is  $\mathbb{R}$ . We conclude that  $\mathcal{K}\alpha \subset \mathcal{K}$  cannot happen. In the same way  $\mathcal{K}\alpha^{-1} \subset \mathcal{K}$  cannot happen either.

Consider first the situation that

$$\mathcal{K} \cap \mathcal{K}\alpha = (z, t]; \text{ then } T\mathcal{K}, \mathcal{K}\alpha \text{ share a ray.}$$

As before  $t$  could be  $+\infty$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . The orientations in  $\mathcal{K}$  and  $\mathcal{K}\alpha$  may agree or not. If the orientations agree then  $z\alpha = z$ . This implies that  $z$  is a global fixed point, impossible by non trivial action.

Suppose then that the orientations in  $\mathcal{K}$  and  $\mathcal{K}\alpha$  disagree. If  $(z, t) = \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  then there is a fixed point  $r$  of  $\alpha$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau = \mathcal{K}$ . Let  $\mathcal{U}_1$  (respectively  $\mathcal{U}_2$ ) be the component of  $T - \{r\}$  containing  $r\tau$  (respectively  $r\tau^{-1}$ ). The condition  $\mathcal{K}\alpha \cap \mathcal{K} = (z, t)$  implies that  $\mathcal{U}_1\alpha = \mathcal{U}_2$ . This is now disallowed by Lemma 5.2, notice that  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  is a local axis for  $\kappa$ .

Finally suppose that  $t$  is finite. Notice that  $\mathcal{K}\alpha \subset \mathcal{K}$  is disallowed. If  $t\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  then the orientation hypothesis produces a fixed point  $r$  of  $\alpha$  in  $(z, t]$ . In addition with  $\mathcal{U}_1, \mathcal{U}_2$  defined above then  $\mathcal{U}_1\alpha = \mathcal{U}_2$  and this is again disallowed by Lemma 5.2. The remaining case to be analysed here is that  $t\alpha$  is not in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . In any case since there is a ray in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  not limiting on  $z$  whose image under  $\alpha$  limits on  $z$ , it follows that  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  has another limit point  $v$ . Then  $v\alpha = z$ . Also  $v\kappa = v$ .

Now compute  $v\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = v\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$ . The left side is  $v\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = v\alpha\tau = z\tau = z$ . The right side is

$$v\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1} = v\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^m = z\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^{m-1} = v\alpha^{m-1},$$

or  $z = z\alpha^{m-2}$ . But this case implies that  $z$  bridges to  $t$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  and so this cannot happen. That is, we cannot have  $\mathcal{K}\alpha \cap \mathcal{K} = (z, t]$ .

Suppose now that  $\mathcal{K}$  has a ray  $l$  (not limiting to  $z$ ) so that  $l\alpha \subset \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and the orientations disagreeing. Then  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  has another limit point  $v$  (with  $v\kappa = v$ ) and  $v\alpha$  is in  $(z, t)$  (the difference here is that we are assuming  $v\alpha$  is not  $z$ ). As above we have  $t\alpha$  is not in  $\mathcal{K}$  and  $\alpha$  has a local axis with  $t$  in it. Also  $t\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{K}$  and closer to  $v$  than  $t$  is. Use

$$v\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau\alpha^{-m} = v\gamma\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}.$$

The left side is  $v\alpha\tau\alpha^{-m}$  and the right side is  $v\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$ . This shows that  $\tau$  expands from  $z$  to  $v$  in  $\mathcal{K}$  and  $t\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = t$ . Now use  $t\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = t\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^{m-1}$ . The right side is  $t\alpha^{m-1}$ . We analyse the left side. Then  $t\tau^{-1}$  is in  $(z, t)$  and  $t\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $(t\alpha^{-1}, z)$  (which is a subset of  $\mathcal{K}$ ). Apply  $\tau^{-1}$  to get a point in  $\mathcal{K}$  which is in  $(t, v)$ . Then apply  $\alpha$  to get a point that bridges to  $\mathcal{K}$  in a point  $o$  in  $(z, t]$ . Finally apply  $\tau$  to get a point that is contained in  $(z, v\alpha^{-1})$ . This cannot be  $t\alpha^{m-1}$ .

We conclude this cannot happen. This analysis shows that  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \cap \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  has a point  $t$  which is the closest to  $z$ .

Given these facts we now consider the general situation that  $\mathcal{K}$  has another limit point  $v$ . As seen above  $v\kappa = v$ . Suppose first that  $v$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Here we split into cases: if  $\alpha$  acts freely then  $v$  is a fixed point of  $\tau$  in the axis of  $\alpha$  and this falls under case B.2 which we will consider latter. Consider then the case that  $\alpha$  does not act freely. Let  $w$  be a fixed point of  $\alpha$  which is a limit point of  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Choose  $w$  so that  $(w, v)$  has no fixed point of  $\alpha$  (as  $v$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ ) and also no fixed point of  $\tau$  or  $\gamma$ . Also  $T_w(v)$  is invariant under  $\alpha$  and  $T_v(w)$  is invariant under  $\tau$ . Then  $v$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  is disallowed by Lemma 7.4 (notice we do not need to use Lemma 7.2, because in this situation we have  $v\kappa = v$ ).

It follows that  $v$  has the same properties as  $z$ . In any case one obtains that

$$\mathcal{K}\alpha \cap \mathcal{K} = [t, r], \quad t \neq r, \quad t \text{ closest to } z$$

and if  $\mathcal{K}$  is not properly embedded in the other direction then  $r$  is an actual point in  $\mathcal{K}$ . Then  $\mathcal{K}\alpha\tau \cap \mathcal{K} = [t\tau, r\tau]$ . So the intersections are the same as occurred in case A so far.

**Problem 2.** Is  $\mathcal{K}\alpha^{-1} \subset \mathcal{U}$ ?

This is similar to problem 1. As before if  $\mathcal{K}\alpha^{-1}$  not contained in  $\mathcal{U}$ , then  $z \in \mathcal{K}\alpha^{-1}$  and  $z\alpha \in \mathcal{K}$ . Recall that  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \cap \mathcal{K} = [a, b]$ . This can only happen if  $b \in (z, z\alpha)$ ,  $a\alpha = b$  and  $a\alpha^{-1} <_\alpha a$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ .

First suppose that  $a\tau^{-1} \in [z, a]$ . Then

$$a\tau^{-1}\alpha \in [z\alpha, a\alpha] = [b, z\alpha] \Rightarrow a\tau^{-1}\alpha \in \mathcal{K} \Rightarrow a\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{K}$$

and this last point bridges to  $b$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Then  $a\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau\alpha^{-m} = a\gamma\beta$  bridges to  $b\alpha^{-m}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . But

$$b\alpha^{-m} <_\alpha b \text{ in } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \Rightarrow a\gamma\beta \text{ bridges to } b\tau^{-1} = a \text{ in } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta.$$

On the other hand  $a\gamma \in [z, a\tau^{-1}]$  and bridges to  $a\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$ , so  $a\gamma\beta$  bridges to  $a\tau^{-1}\beta$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$ . Since  $a\tau^{-1}\beta$  is a point in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta - \mathcal{K}$  it is not equal to  $b\tau^{-1}$ , leading to a contradiction.

The second option is  $a\tau^{-1} > a$  in  $\mathcal{K}$ . Here use

$$z\beta^{-1} = z\alpha\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{K}, \quad z\alpha \in (z, z\beta^{-1}) \Rightarrow z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \notin \mathcal{U}.$$

On the other hand  $z\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $a\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  so bridges to  $a\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$ . So  $z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  bridges to  $a\tau^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  and is in  $\mathcal{U}$ . As above this is a contradiction.

We conclude that Problem 2 does not occur.

After some analysis as in problem 1, this implies that

$$\mathcal{K}\alpha^{-1} \cap \mathcal{K} = [t', r'], \quad \text{with } t' \neq r', \quad t' \neq z$$

and if  $\mathcal{K}$  not properly embedded on the other side then  $r'$  has to be finite in  $\mathcal{K}$ .

Then clearly  $\mathcal{K}\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \subset \mathcal{U}$  and intersects  $\mathcal{K}$  in a segment.

The last problem is the following:

**Problem 3.** Does  $\mathcal{K}\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1} \subset \mathcal{U}$ ?

Suppose not, that is,  $\mathcal{K}\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1} \not\subset \mathcal{U}$ . We have to be careful here. First a preliminary claim:

*Claim.*  $z \in \mathcal{K}\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}$ .

If this is not true then  $\mathcal{K}\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1} \cap \mathcal{U} = \emptyset$ . Notice that

$$\mathcal{K}\alpha\tau \cap \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \neq \emptyset \Rightarrow \mathcal{K}\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1} \cap \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \neq \emptyset \text{ and } \mathcal{K}\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1} \cap \mathcal{U} \neq \emptyset,$$

contrary to assumption here.

So consider  $\mathcal{K}\alpha\tau \cap \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha = \emptyset$ . Also here  $\mathcal{K}\alpha\tau \cap \mathcal{K}$  is a non trivial segment. If  $\mathcal{K}\alpha\tau$  bridges to  $a$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  then  $\mathcal{K}\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}$  is contained in  $\mathcal{U}$  and we are done. It follows that  $\mathcal{K}\alpha\tau$  has to bridge to  $b$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  and hence  $z\alpha$  has to be in the this bridge. But then  $z\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{K}$ , which was disallowed in problem 2. This proves the claim.

We now analyse what happens when

$$z \in \mathcal{K}\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1} \text{ so } z\tau^{-1} = z \in \mathcal{K}\alpha\beta \text{ and } z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{K}.$$

Also  $z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma = z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{K}$  as well.

**Situation I.**  $a\alpha^{-1} <_\alpha a$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ .

**Situation I.1.**  $a\tau < a$  in  $\mathcal{K}$ .

Here  $z\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $a\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ , so it bridges to  $a\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$ . Also

$$z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} \in \mathcal{K} \text{ and } a\tau^{-1} < a < a\alpha^{-1} < z\alpha^{-1}.$$

As  $\beta^{-1}$  moves points up along  $\mathcal{K}$ , it follows that  $z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} > b$  in  $\mathcal{K}$  and  $a\tau^{-1}\beta^{-1} = b\tau^{-1}$ . Here  $a\alpha^{-1} \in [a\tau^{-1}, z\alpha^{-1}]$ , see Figure 13 (a). Then

$$a\tau^{-1}\beta^{-1} = b\tau^{-1} < a\beta^{-1} < a\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} = v_1 < z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} = v_2$$

and all are in  $\mathcal{K}$ . Also  $a\beta^{-1} \in (b, a\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}) \subset \mathcal{K}$  and  $z\beta^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{K}$  in  $a\beta^{-1}$  so bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $b$ . Then  $z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} = v_2\gamma^{-1} \in \mathcal{K}$  bridges to  $a$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  and  $a\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} = v_1\gamma^{-1}$  is in  $(z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}, a)$ , see Figure 13 (a). Then

$$z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} < a\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} < a\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} < z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1},$$

all points in  $\mathcal{K}$ . This contradicts the fact that  $\gamma$  acts as a translation in  $\mathcal{K}$ .

**Situation I.2.**  $a\tau > a$  in  $\mathcal{K}$ .

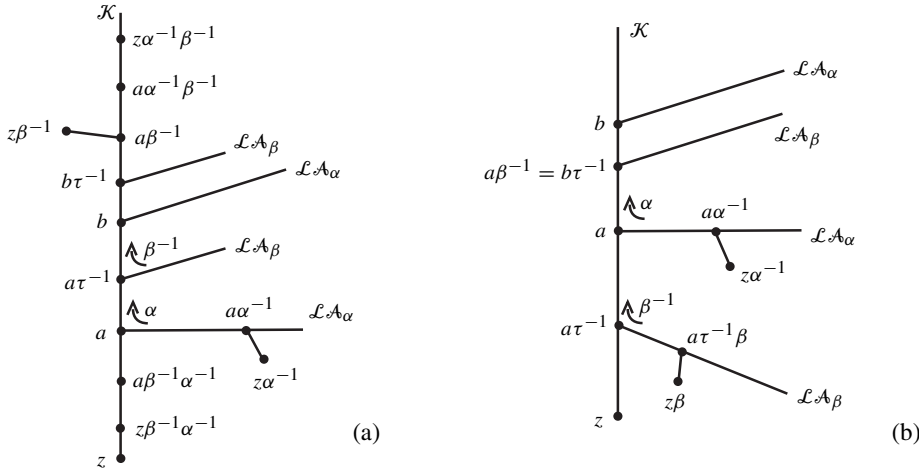


Figure 13. Situation  $a\alpha^{-1} <_{\alpha} a$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$ : (a) Picture when  $a\tau < a$  in  $\mathcal{K}$ . (b) Picture when  $a\tau^{-1} < a$  in  $\mathcal{K}$ .

Here  $z\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $a$  in  $\mathcal{K}$ , see Figure 13 (b). If  $a \geq b\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{K}$  then  $z\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to a point  $t \geq_{\beta} b\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\beta}$ , so

$$z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} \text{ bridges to } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\beta} \text{ in a point } \geq_{\beta} b\tau^{-1}\beta^{-1} \text{ and } z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} \notin \mathcal{K},$$

contradiction. Hence  $a < b\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{K}$  and  $z\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $a$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\beta}$  so  $z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  bridges to  $a\beta^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\beta}$  and as  $z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{K}$  then

$$z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} > b\tau^{-1} \text{ in } \mathcal{K} \text{ and } a\beta^{-1} = b\tau^{-1} \text{ or } a\tau\alpha = b.$$

Now

$$a\beta^{-1} = b\tau^{-1} \text{ so } a\alpha = a\tau^{-1}\beta^{-1}\tau < a\beta^{-1}\tau = b,$$

in particular  $a\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{K}$ . Also  $z\beta$  bridges to  $a$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$  and so does  $z$ . But  $z\beta\alpha = z\alpha\beta$  and  $z\alpha$  bridges to  $a\alpha$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\alpha}$ . Since  $a\alpha < b$ , then  $z\alpha, z\alpha\beta$  bridge to  $a\alpha$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\tau}$  as well.

If  $a\alpha < b\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{K}$  then  $z\alpha, z\alpha\beta$  bridge to  $a\alpha$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\beta}$ , impossible – they have to bridge to distinct points in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\beta}$ . If

$$b\tau^{-1} \in (a, a\alpha) \Rightarrow z\alpha, z\alpha\beta \text{ bridge to } b\tau^{-1} \text{ in } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_{\beta},$$

again contradiction. Therefore  $a\alpha = b\tau^{-1}$  or  $a\alpha\tau = b$ . Now

$$a\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = b\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = a, \text{ so } a\gamma = a\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}.$$

Notice that  $a\gamma \in [z, a\tau^{-1}]$ . But  $a\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $a$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$ , so  $a\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  bridges to  $a\beta^{-1} = b\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  and  $a\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  cannot be  $a\gamma$ , contradiction.

This finishes the analysis of situation I.

The remaining options are extremely similar and have shortened proofs.

**Situation II.**  $a\alpha <_\alpha a$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ .

**Situation II.1.**  $a\tau^{-1} < a$  in  $\mathcal{K}$ .

This is as situation I.1 above. Here  $z\beta^{-1}$  bridges to  $a$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ , so  $z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $a\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  and  $a\alpha^{-1} = b$ . It follows that

$$b < a\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1} < a\tau^{-1}\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} < z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1},$$

all points in  $\mathcal{K}$ .

On the other hand  $a\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \in (b, (a\tau^{-1})\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}) \subset \mathcal{K}$ . The point  $z\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $(a\tau^{-1})\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{K}$ . It follows that

$$z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} < (a\tau^{-1})\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} < (a\tau^{-1})\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} < z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1},$$

all points in  $\mathcal{K}$ . As before this contradicts the fact that  $\gamma$  acts as a translation in  $\mathcal{K}$ .

**Situation II.2.**  $a\tau < a$  in  $\mathcal{K}$ .

This is very much like situation I.2. Here  $z\beta^{-1}$  bridges to  $a\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{K}$ . If  $a\tau^{-1} \geq b$  in  $\mathcal{K}$ , then

$$z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \text{ bridges to a point } >_\alpha b \text{ in } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \Rightarrow z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \notin \mathcal{K},$$

contradiction. Hence

$$a\tau^{-1} < b \text{ in } \mathcal{K}, z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} > b \text{ in } \mathcal{K} \text{ and } a\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1} = b \text{ or } a = b\alpha\tau.$$

In addition,

$$z\alpha, z \text{ bridge to } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta \text{ in } a\tau^{-1} \Rightarrow z\beta\alpha = z\alpha\beta, z\beta \text{ bridge to } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta \text{ in } a\tau^{-1}\beta,$$

and similarly to situation I.2, this implies  $a\tau^{-1}\beta = b$  or  $a = b\tau\alpha$ . Then  $b\alpha\beta = b$  and  $b\gamma = b\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$ . But  $b\gamma \geq b\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{K}$  and  $b\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $b$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$ , so  $b\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  bridges to  $b\beta^{-1} = a\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  and cannot be equal to  $b\tau^{-1}$ .

This contradiction shows that problem 3 cannot occur. This finishes the proof of Lemma 6.1.  $\square$

It follows from Lemma 6.1 that  $\mathcal{K}\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1} \subset \mathcal{U}$ , so  $\mathcal{K}\alpha\beta \subset \mathcal{U}$  as is  $\mathcal{K}\gamma\beta\alpha$ . So all of the sets  $\mathcal{K}, \mathcal{K}\alpha, \mathcal{K}\alpha\tau, \mathcal{K}\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}, \mathcal{K}\alpha\beta, \mathcal{K}\alpha^{-1}, \mathcal{K}\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  and  $\mathcal{K}\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha$  (which is  $\mathcal{K}\beta\alpha = \mathcal{K}\gamma^{-1}\alpha\beta = \mathcal{K}\alpha\beta$ ) are contained in  $\mathcal{U}$  and none has  $z$  as an ideal point. If  $\mathcal{K}$  has another ideal point  $v$ , then  $v$  has the same properties as  $z$  and the same situation occurs with respect to this other ideal point.

Given these facts, an analysis exactly as in case A.2 can be applied here. That analysis then shows that case B.1.4 is not possible.

Hence case B.1.4 is disallowed. This also finishes the proof of case B.1.

For case B.2 we return to the study of  $\alpha$  acting freely using the axis  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ .

**Case B.2.**  $\text{Fix}(\tau) \cap \mathcal{A}_\alpha \neq \emptyset$ .

This is the key case of the proof for essential laminations. In this case the topology will be important, in particular, the exact condition  $|p - 2q| = 1$  will be used in a crucial manner. Let  $z \in \text{Fix}(\tau) \cap \mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Let  $\mathcal{U}_1$  (respectively  $\mathcal{U}_2$ ) be the component of  $T - \{z\}$  containing  $z\alpha$  (respectively  $z\alpha^{-1}$ ). A priori we do not know whether  $z$  is also a fixed point of  $\gamma$ . In some subcases, the tricky part will be in fact to show that  $z\gamma = z$ .

**Case B.2.1.**  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau = \mathcal{U}_1$ .

Notice that  $\mathcal{U}_1\alpha$  is contained in  $\mathcal{U}_1$ . Here use  $z\alpha\tau = z\tau\gamma\beta\alpha^m = z\gamma\beta\alpha^m$ .

$$z\alpha \in \mathcal{U}_1 \Rightarrow z\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{U}_1 \Rightarrow z\alpha\tau\alpha^{-m} \in \mathcal{U}_1\alpha^{-m} \subset \mathcal{U}_1 \Rightarrow z\gamma\beta \in \mathcal{U}_1.$$

So  $z\gamma\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_1$  and then  $z\gamma\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_1$  or  $z\gamma$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_1\alpha$ . In particular  $z < z\alpha < z\gamma$ , see Figure 14 (a). We stress that in this case  $z\gamma$  is not equal to  $z$ !

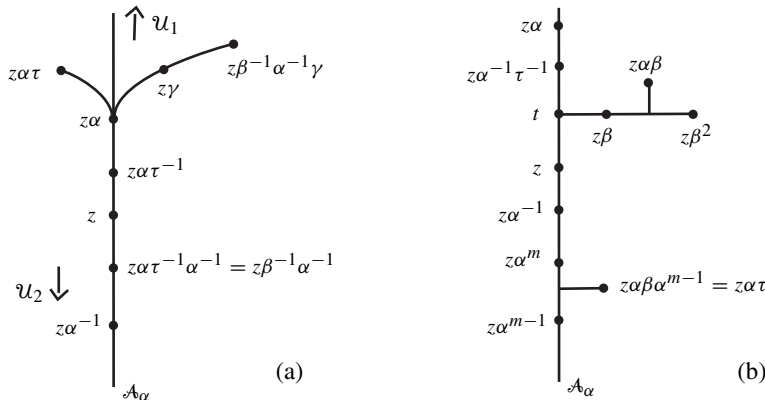


Figure 14. Case B: (a) Picture when  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau = \mathcal{U}_1$ . (b) Picture when  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} = \mathcal{U}_2$  and  $[z, z\beta] \cap [z, z\alpha] = [z, t]$ .

Use now  $z\alpha\tau = z\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1} = z\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^{m-1}$ .

$$z\alpha\tau\alpha^{1-m} \in \mathcal{U}_1 \Rightarrow z\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_1 \Rightarrow z\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_1 \Rightarrow z\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{U}_1\alpha.$$

In particular  $z < z\alpha < z\alpha\tau$  and  $z < z\alpha\tau^{-1} < z\alpha$  and so  $z\alpha\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \in (z\alpha^{-1}, z)$ . In other words

$$z\alpha\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1} = z\tau\alpha\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1} = z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \in (z\alpha^{-1}, z).$$



Then  $z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2$  so  $z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2\gamma$ . Notice  $z\beta^{-1} = z\tau\alpha\tau^{-1} = z\alpha\tau^{-1}$  with  $z\alpha \in \mathcal{U}_1, z\alpha\tau^{-1}$  also in  $\mathcal{U}_1$ .

Recall that  $z\gamma \neq z$ . If  $\mathcal{U}_1\gamma \subset \mathcal{U}_1$  this implies that  $z$  is in a local axis for  $\gamma$  contradicting  $z\gamma^q = z\tau^{-p} = z$ . Therefore  $\mathcal{U}_1\gamma$  is not contained in  $\mathcal{U}_1$  and consequently  $\mathcal{U}_2\gamma$  is contained in  $\mathcal{U}_1$  and so  $z\gamma$  separates  $\mathcal{U}_2\gamma$  from  $z$ . Hence

$$z\alpha \text{ separates } \mathcal{U}_2\gamma \text{ from } z \text{ and } z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma \in \mathcal{U}_2\gamma.$$

But  $z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma = z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} = z\alpha^{-1}\tau\alpha\tau^{-1}$ . Now  $z\alpha$  separates  $z$  from  $z\alpha^{-1}\tau\alpha\tau^{-1}$  which is in  $\mathcal{U}_2\gamma$ . Apply  $\tau$ :  $z\alpha\tau$  separates  $z$  from  $z\alpha^{-1}\tau\alpha$ . Then

$$z\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{U}_1\alpha \Rightarrow z\alpha^{-1}\tau\alpha \in \mathcal{U}_1\alpha \Rightarrow z\alpha^{-1}\tau \in \mathcal{U}_1 \text{ and } z\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} = \mathcal{U}_1.$$

But this contradicts  $z\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2$ . This is an impossible case.

We conclude that  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau \neq \mathcal{U}_1$ .

**Case B.2.2.**  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau \neq \mathcal{U}_2$ .

Then  $z\alpha\tau$  is not in  $\mathcal{U}_2$ , which implies  $z\alpha\tau\alpha^{1-m}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_1$ , or  $z\alpha\beta \in \mathcal{U}_1$  and  $z\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_1$ . By assumption  $z\alpha\tau \notin \mathcal{U}_1$ , hence  $z\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_2$  and  $z\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_2\tau^{-1}$ . This would imply  $\mathcal{U}_2\tau^{-1} = \mathcal{U}_1$  or  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau = \mathcal{U}_2$ , so the assumption is incompatible.

We conclude that  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau = \mathcal{U}_2$ .

**Case B.2.3.**  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} = \mathcal{U}_2$ .

This is a very interesting case. Here we only use the fact that  $p$  is odd.

First consider  $z\beta = z\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = z\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  which is in  $\mathcal{U}_2\tau^{-1} = \mathcal{U}_1$ . Then  $z\alpha, z\beta$  are in the component  $\mathcal{U}_1$ , hence  $[z, z\alpha], [z, z\beta]$  share a subprong. Suppose first that

$$[z, z\beta] \cap [z, z\alpha] = [z, t], t \neq z\alpha, z\beta, \text{ that is } z\alpha \notin [z, z\beta], z\beta \notin [z, z\alpha]$$

see Figure 14 (b). Notice that  $\beta$  has a local axis through  $z\tau^{-1} = z$ . Hence  $z\beta$  is in  $(z, z\beta^2)$  and  $z\alpha\beta$  bridges to  $t$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Also  $z\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $t\alpha^{m-1}$  which is a point in  $(z\alpha^m, z\alpha^{m-1})$ . But

$$z\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1} = z\alpha\tau \Rightarrow z\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \in [z, z\alpha] \Rightarrow z\beta = z\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \in [z, z\alpha],$$

contradiction.

So either  $z\beta \in [z, z\alpha]$  or  $z\alpha \in [z, z\beta]$ .

**Situation I.**  $z\alpha$  is in  $[z, z\beta]$ .

Use  $z\beta\tau = z\tau\alpha^{-1} = z\alpha^{-1}$ . As  $z\alpha$  is in  $[z, z\beta]$ , then  $z\alpha\tau \in [z, z\beta\tau] = [z, z\alpha^{-1}]$  and  $z\alpha\tau\alpha^{1-m} \in [z\alpha^{-m}, z\alpha^{1-m}]$ . But

$$z\alpha\tau\alpha^{1-m} = z\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau\alpha^{1-m} = z\alpha\beta, \text{ so } z\alpha\beta \in [z\alpha^{-m}, z\alpha^{1-m}] \subset \mathcal{A}_\alpha.$$

We stress that  $z\alpha\beta \in \mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Here  $z\beta^{-1} < z < z\alpha$ , hence  $z < z\beta < z\alpha\beta$ . It follows that

$$z\beta \in \mathcal{A}_\alpha \text{ and } z\beta \in [z, z\alpha\beta] \Rightarrow z\alpha\beta\alpha^{-1} \in [z\alpha^{-m-1}, z\alpha^{-m}].$$

We want  $z\gamma = z$  or  $z\alpha\beta = z\beta\alpha$ . We first analyse the other two possibilities.

**Situation I.1.**  $z\alpha\beta\alpha^{-1} > z\beta$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ .

Then  $z\beta < z\alpha\beta\alpha^{-1} < z\alpha\beta$ , so  $z < z\gamma < z\alpha$ , or  $z\gamma \in (z, z\alpha)$ , so  $z\gamma \in \mathcal{U}_1$ . Clearly  $z\beta\alpha \in \mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Here  $z\alpha\beta > z\beta\alpha$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Then

$$z < z\beta\alpha < z\alpha\beta \text{ all in } \mathcal{A}_\alpha \Rightarrow z\beta^{-1} < z\beta\alpha\beta^{-1} < z\alpha \text{ and } z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} < z\gamma^{-1} < z.$$

But  $z\beta^{-1} = z\alpha\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_2$ , hence  $z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2$ . Now  $z\gamma \in \mathcal{U}_1$ ,  $z\gamma^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_2$ , therefore  $z$  is in a local axis for  $\gamma$ , hence  $z\gamma^q \neq z$ , contradiction.

**Situation I.2.** Suppose  $z\alpha\beta <_\alpha z\beta\alpha$ .

Then

$$z < z\alpha\beta\alpha^{-1} < z\beta \Rightarrow z\beta^{-1} < z\gamma < z.$$

As  $z\beta^{-1} = z\alpha\tau^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2$ , then  $z\gamma$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2$ .

Now  $z\alpha\beta <_\alpha z\beta\alpha$ . If  $\mathcal{A}_\beta$  contains elements in  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  above  $z\alpha\beta$ , that is,  $\mathcal{A}_\beta \cap \mathcal{A}_\alpha \supset [z, t)$  with  $t >_\alpha z\alpha\beta$  and  $t <_\alpha z\beta\alpha$ , then

$$z < z\alpha < t\beta^{-1} < z\beta\alpha\beta^{-1} \Rightarrow z < t\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} < z\gamma^{-1}.$$

Here  $t\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $e >_\alpha z\alpha\beta\alpha^{-1} >_\alpha z$  in  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . So  $t\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  and  $z\gamma^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_1$  and not in  $\mathcal{U}_2$ .

On the other hand if  $\mathcal{A}_\beta$  escapes  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $z\alpha\beta$ , then  $z\beta\alpha\beta^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{A}_\beta$  in  $z\alpha$ , hence bridges to  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $z\alpha$  as  $z\alpha \in (z, z\alpha\beta)$ . Hence  $z\beta\alpha\beta^{-1} \notin \mathcal{U}_2\alpha$  and  $z\beta\alpha\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} = z\gamma^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $z$  and  $z\gamma^{-1}$  is not in  $\mathcal{U}_2$ . In any case  $z\gamma^{-1}$  is not in  $\mathcal{U}_2$  and  $z\gamma$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2$  so  $z$  separates  $z\gamma$  from  $z\gamma^{-1}$  and  $z$  is in a local axis for  $\gamma$ , impossible.

We conclude that  $z\alpha\beta = z\beta\alpha$  or that  $z\gamma = z$ .

**Situation I.3.**  $z\gamma = z$ .

Then  $\gamma$  leaves invariant the set of components of  $T - \{z\}$ . Recall that  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} = \mathcal{U}_2$  and  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau = \mathcal{U}_2$  in situation I. Use  $z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma = z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$ . The left side is  $z\tau\alpha\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma = z\alpha\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma$ .

$$z\alpha \in \mathcal{U}_1 \Rightarrow z\alpha\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} \neq \mathcal{U}_1, \text{ so } z\alpha\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_2 \text{ and } z\alpha\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma \in \mathcal{U}_2\gamma.$$

On the other hand the right side is  $z\alpha^{-1}\tau\alpha\tau^{-1}$ :

$$z\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_2$$

$$\Rightarrow z\alpha^{-1}\tau \in \mathcal{U}_2\tau = \mathcal{U}_1, z\alpha^{-1}\tau\alpha \in \mathcal{U}_1 \text{ and } z\alpha^{-1}\tau\alpha\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} = \mathcal{U}_2.$$

So  $\mathcal{U}_2\gamma \cap \mathcal{U}_2 \neq \emptyset$ . Since  $\gamma$  now preserves the set of components of  $T - \{z\}$  it follows that  $\mathcal{U}_2\gamma = \mathcal{U}_2$  and  $\mathcal{U}_1\gamma = \mathcal{U}_2\tau\gamma = \mathcal{U}_2\gamma\tau = \mathcal{U}_2\tau = \mathcal{U}_1$ . Now we use  $p$  odd and  $\tau^p\gamma^q = \text{id}$ :

$$\mathcal{U}_1 = \mathcal{U}_1\gamma^q\tau^p = \mathcal{U}_1\tau^p = \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{p(\text{mod } 2)} = \mathcal{U}_1\tau.$$

This contradicts  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau \neq \mathcal{U}_1$  and finishes the analysis of situation I.

**Situation II.**  $z\beta \in [z, z\alpha]$ .

This is very similar to the previous case if we think of it in the appropriate way. The trick here is to switch the roles of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , which can be done. Notice first that  $z\beta \in \mathcal{U}_1$  and  $z\beta^{-1} = z\tau\alpha\tau^{-1} = z\alpha\tau^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2$ . So the component of  $T - \{z\}$  containing  $z\beta$  (respectively  $z\beta^{-1}$ ) is the component  $\mathcal{U}_1$  (respectively  $\mathcal{U}_2$ ). First rewrite the relations as

$$\tau\alpha\tau^{-1} = \beta^{-1}, \quad \tau\beta\tau^{-1} = \gamma^{-1}\alpha\beta^m = \beta\alpha\beta^{m-1}.$$

As  $z\beta$  is in  $[z, z\alpha]$  then  $z\beta\tau^{-1}$  is in  $[z\tau^{-1}, z\alpha\tau^{-1}] = [z, z\beta^{-1}]$ . So

$$z\tau\beta\tau^{-1}\beta^{1-m} = z\beta\tau^{-1}\beta^{1-m} = z\beta\alpha \in [z\beta^{-m}, z\beta^{1-m}] \subset \mathcal{A}_\beta.$$

As  $z\beta \in [z, z\alpha]$ , then  $z\beta\alpha$  is in  $[z\alpha, z\alpha^2]$  and

$$z\alpha \in [z, z\beta\alpha] \subset [z, z\beta^{1-m}] \subset \mathcal{A}_\beta.$$

Therefore  $z\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{A}_\beta$  and similarly  $z\alpha\beta, z\beta\alpha$  are in  $\mathcal{A}_\beta$ .

From this point on the proof is entirely similar to the analysis in situation I: consider whether  $z\alpha\beta <_\beta z\beta\alpha$ ,  $z\alpha\beta >_\beta z\beta\alpha$ , or  $z\alpha\beta = z\beta\alpha$ , with completely analogous proofs.

Therefore this case is disallowed. This finishes the analysis of the case B.2.3,  $\mathcal{U}_2\tau = \mathcal{U}_1$ .

**Case B.2.4.**  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau = \mathcal{U}_2, \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} \neq \mathcal{U}_2$ .

This is the most interesting case which relates to the topology in a crucial way.

Use  $z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma = z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$ . The right side is  $z\tau\alpha\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma = z\alpha\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma$ .

$$z\alpha \in \mathcal{U}_1 \Rightarrow z\alpha\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} \neq \mathcal{U}_1 \Rightarrow z\alpha\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_2.$$

Hence  $z\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2\gamma$ . On the other hand  $z\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} = z\alpha^{-1}\tau\alpha\tau^{-1}$ :

$$z\alpha^{-1}\tau \in \mathcal{U}_2\tau \neq \mathcal{U}_2 \Rightarrow z\alpha^{-1}\tau\alpha \in \mathcal{U}_1 \Rightarrow z\alpha^{-1}\tau\alpha\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} \neq \mathcal{U}_2.$$

We conclude that

$$\mathcal{U}_2\gamma \cap \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} \neq \emptyset, \quad \text{or} \quad \mathcal{U}_1\tau\gamma \cap \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} \neq \emptyset. \quad (*)$$

What we actually want is that these two sets are equal. A priori we have to be careful because  $\gamma$  may not preserve the set of components of  $T - \{z\}$ , or equivalently we may have  $z\gamma \neq z$ . So we first deal with this case. We will need the following useful lemma:

**Lemma 6.2.** *Let  $\eta$  be a homeomorphism of a tree  $V$  so that  $\eta^n$  has a fixed point  $c$ , where  $n$  is not 0. Then there is a fixed point of  $\eta$  in  $[c, c\eta]$ .*

*Proof.* Consider  $c\eta^2$ . If  $c\eta^2$  is in  $[c, c\eta]$  and not equal to  $c\eta$ , then  $\eta$  sends  $[c, c\eta]$  into itself and has a fixed point there, done. If  $c\eta$  is in  $(c, c\eta^2)$  then  $c$  is in a local axis of  $\eta$  and  $c\eta^n$  is not  $c$ , impossible. If  $c$  is in  $(c\eta, c\eta^2)$ , then  $\eta^{-1}$  sends  $[c\eta, c\eta^2]$  into itself (into  $[c, c\eta]$ ) producing a fixed point there, done.

We can now assume  $c\eta^2$  bridges to  $[c, c\eta]$  in a point  $r$  which is in  $(c, c\eta)$ , see Figure 15 (a). If  $r\eta = r$  we are done. Assume  $r\eta \neq r$ . Then  $r\eta$  is in  $[c\eta, c\eta^2]$ .



Figure 15. (a)  $r\eta \in [r, c\eta]$ , (b)  $r\eta \in (r, c\eta^2]$ .

Suppose first that  $r\eta$  is in  $[r, c\eta]$ , see Figure 15 (a). Then  $r\eta^2$  is in  $[r\eta, c\eta^2]$  so either  $[r\eta, r]$  is contained in its image under  $\eta$  or vice versa. As seen above there is a fixed point of  $\eta$  in  $[r, r\eta]$ .

Suppose now that  $r\eta$  is in  $(r, c\eta^2]$  see Figure 15 (b). Hence  $c < r < r\eta$  and  $c\eta < r\eta < r\eta^2$ . Then  $r \in (c\eta, r\eta)$  and  $r\eta \in (r, r\eta^2)$ , so  $r$  is in a local axis for  $\eta$ . This implies that  $c\eta^t \neq c$  for any nonzero  $t$  in  $\mathbb{Z}$ , contradiction. This finishes the proof.  $\square$

We are back to case B.2.4.

**Situation I.**  $z\gamma \neq z$ .

Suppose first that  $z\gamma \in \mathcal{U}_2$ . Notice  $\mathcal{U}_2\tau \neq \mathcal{U}_1$  and also  $\neq \mathcal{U}_2$ . Since  $z\gamma^q = z$ , the previous lemma shows that there is  $c$  in  $[z, z\gamma]$  fixed by  $\gamma$  so  $c$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2$ . This implies

$$\mathcal{U}_2\tau\gamma \subset \mathcal{U}_2 \Rightarrow \mathcal{U}_1\tau^2\gamma \subset \mathcal{U}_2, \text{ or } \mathcal{U}_1\tau\gamma \subset \mathcal{U}_1.$$

But by (\*)  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau\gamma \cap \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} \neq \emptyset$ , which now implies  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} \cap \mathcal{U}_1 \neq \emptyset$ . This is impossible and rules out this case.

The second possibility is that  $z\gamma \in \mathcal{U}_1$ . Here  $\mathcal{U}_2\gamma \subset \mathcal{U}_1$  so  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau\gamma \subset \mathcal{U}_1$ . As  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau\gamma \cap \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} \neq \emptyset$  then  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} \cap \mathcal{U}_1 \neq \emptyset$ , also impossible.

The final option is  $z\gamma \notin \mathcal{U}_1 \cup \mathcal{U}_2$ ,  $z\gamma \in \mathcal{U}_3$  (which may be  $\mathcal{U}_2\tau$  or not). Here there is  $y$  fixed by  $\gamma$  with  $y \in \mathcal{U}_3$ . Here first use

$$\mathcal{U}_2\gamma \subset \mathcal{U}_3, \text{ or } \mathcal{U}_1\tau\gamma \subset \mathcal{U}_3 \Rightarrow \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} \cap \mathcal{U}_3 \neq \emptyset \text{ and } \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} = \mathcal{U}_3.$$

Also

$$\mathcal{U}_1\gamma \subset \mathcal{U}_3 \Rightarrow \mathcal{U}_1\tau\gamma \subset \mathcal{U}_3\tau.$$

By (\*),  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} \cap \mathcal{U}_3\tau \neq \emptyset$  or  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} = \mathcal{U}_3\tau$ . Then  $\mathcal{U}_3 = \mathcal{U}_3\tau$  or  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} = \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-2}$ , so  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau = \mathcal{U}_1$ , which is impossible. This rules out this final option.

We conclude that:

**Situation II.**  $z\gamma = z$ .

This is a crucial case. In fact there is an essential lamination in  $M_{p/q}$  whenever  $|p - 2q| \geq 2$  and this essential lamination may satisfy these properties:  $\tau$  has a fixed point,  $\alpha$  has an axis (or at least a local axis) which contains the fixed point of  $\tau$ . See more below. So here is a part of the proof where the specific condition  $|p - 2q| = 1$  needs to be used. See remark below on the topological significance of this condition.

Here is the proof. As  $z\gamma = z$ ,  $\gamma$  permutes components of  $T - \{z\}$ . So  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau\gamma \cap \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} \neq \emptyset$  implies

$$\mathcal{U}_1\tau\gamma = \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1} \quad \text{or} \quad \mathcal{U}_1\gamma\tau^2 = \mathcal{U}_1.$$

We now compute

$$\mathcal{U}_1 = \mathcal{U}_1\tau^p\gamma^q = \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{p-2q}\tau^{2q}\gamma^q = \mathcal{U}_1(\gamma\tau^2)^q\tau^{p-2q} = \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{p-2q}.$$

When  $|p - 2q| = 1$  then either  $\mathcal{U}_1 = \mathcal{U}_1\tau$  or  $\mathcal{U}_1 = \mathcal{U}_1\tau^{-1}$ . So in either case  $\mathcal{U}_1 = \mathcal{U}_1\tau$ ! But this contradicts that we proved in case B.2.1 that  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau$  is not equal to  $\mathcal{U}_1$ . This is a contradiction showing that case B.2.4 cannot happen. This is quite straightforward, but it needed all the previous steps.

This finishes the proof of case B:  $\text{Fix}(\tau) \neq \emptyset$ ,  $\text{Fix}(\alpha) = \emptyset$ .

**Remark.** We now analyse the topology of this situation. Consider the original stable foliation in the torus bundle over the circle (the manifold  $M$ ). After blow up of the leaf through  $\delta$ , this produces a lamination  $\lambda_1$  in  $M - N(\delta)$ . The solid torus complementary component of  $\lambda_1$  has degeneracy locus  $(1, 2)$ , which corresponds to  $\gamma\tau^2$ . This means the  $\gamma\tau^2$  is a curve in the boundary leaf of the complementary component and it also preserves the "outer" side of this complementary component. Now do  $p/q$  Dehn filling on  $M - N(\delta)$  and look at the tree  $T$  produced. The leaf through  $\delta$  collapses to a fixed point  $z$  of  $\tau$  (and  $\gamma$  too). Usually neither  $\tau$  nor  $\gamma$  preserves the complementary components of  $z$ , but the above fact about the degeneracy locus means that  $\gamma\tau^2$

does preserve these components – if  $\mathcal{U}_1$  is one such component of  $T - \{z\}$  then  $\mathcal{U}_1\gamma\tau^2 = \mathcal{U}_1$ . After  $(q, p)$  Dehn surgery, the leaf space  $T$  of the lamination has a singularity at  $z$  with exactly  $|p - 2q|$  prongs. The transformation  $\tau$  rotates by one in the set of prongs, hence  $\tau^{p-2q}$  preserves each of the prongs. This is also detected by  $\gamma\tau^2$  preserving the set of prongs and  $\tau^p\gamma^q$  being null homotopic. All is well when  $|p - 2q| \geq 2$ , because we have 2 or more prongs and the lamination is essential and the action is very nice. However when  $|p - 2q| = 1$  there is only one prong and the lamination is not essential. It is amazing that this sort of difficulty can still be detected on the level of group action on trees. Notice that this is exactly what the proof shows that  $\mathcal{U}_1\tau = \mathcal{U}_1$ , which must happen if there is only one prong.

### 7. Case C: $\alpha$ has a fixed point and $\tau$ has a fixed point

Let  $s$  in  $\text{Fix}(\kappa)$ ,  $w$  in  $\text{Fix}(\alpha)$  with  $(s, w] \cap \text{Fix}(\kappa) = \emptyset$  and  $[s, w) \cap \text{Fix}(\alpha) = \emptyset$ . The following notation will be very useful in this section. Given  $u \neq v$  in  $T$  recall that

$$T_u(v) = \{\text{component of } T - \{u\} \text{ containing } v\}.$$

Let

$$\mathcal{W} = T_s(w), \quad \mathcal{V} = T_w(s).$$

This notation for  $\mathcal{W}$ ,  $\mathcal{V}$  will be used throughout this section. First in this section we will try to prove that  $\mathcal{W}$  is invariant under  $\tau$  and  $\mathcal{V}$  is invariant under  $\alpha$ . This will produce local axes for  $\alpha$  and (eventually) for  $\tau$  and we will see how the 2 axes interact.

**Case C.1.** Suppose  $\mathcal{W}\tau \neq \mathcal{W}$ .

Notice that  $\mathcal{W}\tau$  is a component of  $T - \{s\}$  as  $s\tau = s\gamma = s$ .

**Case C.1.1.** Suppose  $w \in [s, s\alpha]$ .

This is equivalent to  $\mathcal{V}\alpha \neq \mathcal{V}$ . Notice  $s\alpha \neq w$ . Here  $s\alpha\beta = s\beta\alpha$ , and  $s\beta\alpha = s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha$ , so

$$\begin{aligned} s\alpha^{-1} \notin \mathcal{V} &\Rightarrow s\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{W} \Rightarrow s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{W}\tau^{-1} \subset \mathcal{V} \\ &\Rightarrow s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha \in \mathcal{V}\alpha \subset \mathcal{W} \Rightarrow s\beta\alpha \in \mathcal{W}. \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand  $s\alpha\beta = s\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$ . Here

$$s\alpha \in \mathcal{V}\alpha \subset \mathcal{W} \Rightarrow s\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{W}\tau \subset \mathcal{V} \Rightarrow s\alpha\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1} \subset \mathcal{W}$$

and  $s\alpha\beta$  is in  $\mathcal{W}\tau$ . These two facts together imply  $\mathcal{W} = \mathcal{W}\tau$ , contrary to assumption.

Conclusion: if  $\mathcal{W}\tau \neq \mathcal{W}$ , then  $\mathcal{V}\alpha = \mathcal{V}$ .

**Case C.1.2.**  $s\alpha^{-1} \notin [s, w], s\alpha \notin [s, w]$ .

This implies  $s\alpha, s\alpha^{-1}$  are in  $\mathcal{W}$ . For otherwise if  $s\alpha$  is not in  $\mathcal{W}$ , then  $s$  is in  $(w, s\alpha]$  and so  $s\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $[w, s]$ . In this case  $s\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $[s, w]$  in a point  $r$  with  $r \in (s, w)$  – the important fact is that  $r$  is not one of the endpoints which would occur if  $s\alpha^{-1}$  is not in  $\mathcal{W}$  or  $\mathcal{V}$ . Then

$$r \in (w, s) \cap (w, s\alpha^{-1}) \Rightarrow r\alpha^{-1} \in (w, s\alpha^{-1}).$$

Notice  $r\alpha^{-1}$  is not equal to  $r$ . If  $r\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $(r, s\alpha^{-1})$ , then  $s\alpha^{-2}$  bridges to  $[r, s\alpha^{-1}]$  in  $r\alpha^{-1}$ , hence  $s\alpha^{-2}$  bridges to  $[s, w]$  in  $r$ . The same happens for all  $s\alpha^n$  with  $n$  negative. If on the other hand  $r\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $(w, r)$  then  $s\alpha^{-2}$  bridges to  $r\alpha^{-1}$  in  $[s, w]$  and  $s\alpha^n$  bridges to  $[s, w]$  in  $r\alpha^{n+1}$  for all  $n$  negative. Notice that  $r\alpha^n$  are all in  $(w, r) \subset (w, s)$ . The important conclusion is that under the hypothesis  $s\alpha, s\alpha^{-1}$  both not in  $[s, w]$  then any  $s\alpha^n$  bridges to  $[s, w]$  in a point in the interior of  $[s, w]$ . Hence all  $s\alpha^n$  are in  $\mathcal{W}$  and  $\mathcal{V}$ .

Use  $s\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = s\gamma\beta\alpha^m$ . Here  $s\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ , so  $s\alpha\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{W}\tau$ . Also  $s\beta = s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{W}\tau^{-1}$  and bridges to  $s$  in  $[s, w]$ . Hence  $s\beta\alpha^m$  bridges to  $s\alpha^m$  in  $[s\alpha^m, w]$ . But  $s\alpha^m$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$  and bridges to  $[s, w]$  in a point in the interior of  $(s, w)$ . This implies  $s\beta\alpha^m$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ , contradiction.

This case is impossible.

**Case C.1.3.** Suppose  $s\alpha \in [s, w]$ .

This implies for instance that  $\mathcal{W}\alpha \subset \mathcal{W}$  and  $T_s(w\tau^{-1})\beta^{-1} \subset T_s(w\tau^{-1})$ .

**Case C.1.3.1.** Suppose  $s\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{W}\tau$ .

Then  $s\beta^{-1} = s\alpha\tau^{-1}$  is in  $(s, w\tau^{-1}) \subset \mathcal{W}\tau^{-1}$ . Also  $s\alpha^{-1} = s\beta\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$ . Here  $s\beta = s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .

In this case suppose first that  $s\beta$  is not in  $\mathcal{V}$ . Then

$$w \in [w\tau^{-1}, s\beta] \text{ and } w\beta^{-1} \in [w\tau^{-1}, s] \Rightarrow w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{W}\tau,$$

as  $s\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{W}\tau$ . This implies that  $w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{W}\tau\gamma$ . Notice  $w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  is not  $s$ . On the other hand

$$w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma = w\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} = w\beta^{-1} \text{ is in } \mathcal{W}\tau^{-1}.$$

Notice if  $w\beta^{-1} = s$ , then

$$w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} = w\beta^{-1}\gamma^{-1} = s\gamma^{-1} = s = w\beta^{-1},$$

contradiction because  $s$  is not fixed by  $\alpha$ .

Collecting all of this together:  $w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma$  is in  $\mathcal{W}\tau\gamma$ . But  $w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma = w\beta^{-1} \in \mathcal{W}\tau^{-1}$ . Hence

$$\mathcal{W}\tau\gamma = \mathcal{W}\tau^{-1} \text{ or } \mathcal{W}\tau^2\gamma = \mathcal{W}, \text{ impossible when } |p - 2q| = 1,$$

as in case B.2.3.

The second option in case C.1.3.1 is that  $s\beta \in \mathcal{V}$ . Recall that  $s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = s\beta$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ . Notice that

$$\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta = (\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha)\tau^{-1} \text{ has a segment } [w\tau^{-1}, s] \subset \mathcal{W}\tau^{-1} \cup \{s\}$$

and then it goes into  $\mathcal{W}$ , as  $s\beta$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ . Then either  $s\beta = t \in (w, s)$  or  $s\beta$  bridges to  $[w, s]$  in  $t \in (w, s)$ , so bridges to  $t$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . In either case  $s\beta\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $t\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  or is  $t\alpha^{-1}$ . If  $t\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $[w, s)$ , then  $s\beta\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $t\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$ , see Figure 16 (a). Here  $t\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $[w\tau^{-1}, s\beta)$ . If

$$s \in [t\alpha^{-1}, w] \text{ then } s\beta\alpha^{-1} \text{ bridges to } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta \text{ in } r, \text{ with } r \in [s, w\tau^{-1}].$$

This depends for instance on whether  $\mathcal{W}\tau = \mathcal{W}\tau^{-1}$  or not. In any case  $s\beta\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  in a point in  $[w\tau^{-1}, s\beta)$ . It follows that  $s\beta\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  bridges to a point  $y$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  with  $y$  in  $[w\tau^{-1}, s)$ , that is,  $s\beta\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{W}\tau^{-1}$ . Then

$$s\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{W}\tau, s\beta\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} = s\alpha^{-1}\gamma \in \mathcal{W}\tau^{-1} \Rightarrow \mathcal{W}\tau\gamma = \mathcal{W}\tau^{-1},$$

contradiction when  $|p - 2q| = 1$ .

This shows that case C.1.3.1 cannot occur.

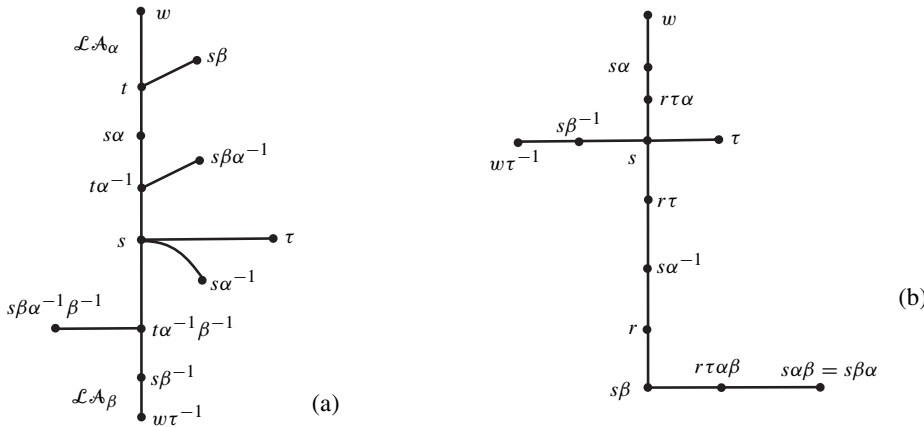


Figure 16. (a) Case C.1.3.1, (b) Case C.1.3.2.

**Case C.1.3.2.**  $s\alpha^{-1}$  is not in  $\mathcal{W}\tau$ .

Here  $s\beta = s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  is not in  $\mathcal{W}$ . Also  $s\beta^{-1} = s\alpha\tau^{-1}$  is not in  $\mathcal{W}$  and is in  $\mathcal{W}\tau^{-1}$ . It follows that

$$\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta \cap [w, s] = \{s\},$$



so  $s\alpha$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  in  $s$  and  $s\alpha\beta = s\beta\alpha$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$  in  $s\beta$ . Hence  $[s, s\beta] \subset (s\alpha, s\beta\alpha)$  and there is a fixed point  $r$  of  $\alpha$  in  $(s, s\beta)$ , see Figure 16 (b). It also implies that

$$s\alpha^{-1} \in [s, r] \text{ and } s\alpha^{-1} \in T_s(s\beta) = T_s(s\beta)\tau,$$

because  $s\beta = s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  and  $s\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $T_s(s\beta)$ , see Figure 16 (b). Also  $\tau$  contracts  $[s, s\beta]$  towards  $[s, s\alpha^{-1}]$ . Now apply  $\tau\alpha\beta = \alpha\tau\alpha^{1-m}$  to  $r$ :  $r\tau\alpha\beta = r\tau\alpha^{1-m}$ .

As  $s\beta\tau = s\alpha^{-1}$  and  $r \in (s, s\beta)$ , then

$$r\tau \in (s, s\alpha^{-1}) \Rightarrow r\tau\alpha \in (s, s\alpha) \Rightarrow r\tau\alpha\beta \in (s\beta, s\alpha\beta) \subset T_r(s\beta).$$

As  $r\tau\alpha$  is in  $(s, s\alpha^{-1}) \subset T_r(s)$  and  $T_r(s)\alpha = T_r(s)$ . This implies  $r\tau\alpha^{1-m}$  is also in  $T_r(s)$ . Therefore  $r$  separates  $r\tau\alpha^{1-m}$  from  $r\tau\alpha\beta$ , contradiction.

This shows that case C.1.3,  $s\alpha \in [s, w]$  cannot occur. Finally consider:

**Case C.1.4.** Suppose  $s\alpha^{-1} \in [s, w]$ .

This implies that  $\mathcal{W}\alpha^{-1} \subset \mathcal{W}$  and  $(\mathcal{W}\tau^{-1})\beta \subset (\mathcal{W}\tau^{-1})$ .

**Case C.1.4.1.** Suppose  $s\alpha \notin \mathcal{W}\tau^{-1}$ .

This case is very similar to case C.1.3.2. Here  $s\beta \in T_s(w\tau^{-1})$  which is not equal to either  $T_s(s\alpha)$  or  $T_s(s\alpha^{-1})$ . Hence  $s\beta$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $s$  and  $s\beta\alpha = s\alpha\beta$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $s\alpha$ . Hence

$$s\beta < s < s\alpha < s\alpha\beta$$

and there is a fixed point  $r$  of  $\beta$  in  $(s, s\alpha)$ . Then  $s\beta^{-1} \in (s, r) \subset (s, s\alpha)$ . Now use  $\beta\tau^{-1}\beta^{1-m} = \tau^{-1}\beta\alpha$  applied to  $r$ :  $r\tau^{-1}\beta^{1-m} = r\tau^{-1}\beta\alpha$ . As  $s\alpha\tau^{-1} = s\beta^{-1}$  then

$$r\tau^{-1} \in (s, s\beta^{-1}) \text{ so } r\tau^{-1}\beta^{1-m} \in (r, s\beta^{1-m}) \subset T_r(s).$$

On the other hand  $r\tau^{-1}\beta\alpha$  is in  $(s\alpha, s\beta\alpha) \subset T_r(s\alpha)$ . As  $T_r(s\alpha) \neq T_r(s)$ , this is a contradiction, ruling out this case.

**Case C.1.4.2.**  $s\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{W}\tau^{-1}$ .

This is similar to case C.1.3.1. Suppose first that  $\mathcal{W}\tau^{-1} = \mathcal{W}\tau$ . Then  $s\alpha\tau^{-1} = s\beta^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ . Also  $\mathcal{W}\beta^{-1}$  is contained in  $\mathcal{W}$ . It follows that

$$s\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} \in \mathcal{W} \text{ and } s\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}\gamma^{-1} = s\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{W}.$$

Hence  $\mathcal{W}\gamma = \mathcal{W}$ ,  $\mathcal{W}\tau^2 = \mathcal{W}$ , leading to contradiction when  $p$  is odd.

Suppose now that  $\mathcal{W}\tau^{-1} \neq \mathcal{W}\tau$ . Then  $s\alpha \in \mathcal{W}\tau^{-1}$  and  $s\alpha\tau^{-1} = s\beta^{-1}$  is not in  $\mathcal{W}$ . Also  $s\beta^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{W}\tau^{-2}$ . So  $s\beta^{-1}$  bridges to  $s$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  and  $s\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $s\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  implying  $s\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ .

Also  $s\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma = s\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$ . Here  $s\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $s$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$ ,  $s\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1}$  bridges to  $s\beta^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\beta$ . But

$$s\beta^{-1} \in \mathcal{W}\tau^{-2} \Rightarrow s\alpha^{-1}\beta^{-1} \in \mathcal{W}\tau^{-2} \Rightarrow \mathcal{W}\gamma = \mathcal{W}\tau^{-2}.$$

As in case B.2.4 this is impossible when  $|p - 2q| = 1$ .

This finishes the analysis of case C.1.4,  $s\alpha^{-1} \in [s, w]$ .

We conclude that case C.1,  $\mathcal{W}\tau \neq \mathcal{W}$  is impossible. This implies  $\mathcal{W}\tau = \mathcal{W}$ . We stress that this does not yet produce a local axis of  $\tau$  in  $\mathcal{W}$ , because we may have other fixed points of  $\tau$  in  $(s, w)$ .

**Case C.2.** Suppose that  $\mathcal{V}\alpha \neq \mathcal{V}$ .

Here we will use  $s\alpha\tau = s\beta\alpha^m = s\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$  many times.

**Case C.2.1.** Suppose  $w\tau, w\tau^{-1}$  are not in  $[s, w]$ .

The bridge from  $w\tau$  to  $[s, w]$  is  $[w\tau, t]$ , where  $t$  is in  $(s, w)$ . Since  $s\alpha \notin \mathcal{V}$ , then  $s\alpha\tau$  bridges to  $t$  in  $[s, w]$ , so  $s\alpha\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{V}$ . Hence  $s\alpha\tau\alpha^{-m}$  is in  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^{-m}$ . This point is equal to  $s\beta = s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$ . In the same way  $s\alpha^{-1}$  is not in  $\mathcal{V}$  and bridges to  $[s, w]$  in  $w$ . It follows that  $s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  bridges to a point  $r$  in  $[s, w]$ , where  $r$  is in  $(s, w)$ , hence  $s\beta \in \mathcal{V}$ . Therefore  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^m = \mathcal{V}$ .

On the other hand

$$s\alpha\tau = s\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1} = s\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^{m-1}.$$

The point  $s\alpha\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{V}$  and bridges to  $t$  in  $[s, w]$ . So  $s\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}$  and bridges to  $w$  in  $[s, w]$  so  $s\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  bridges to  $r$  in  $[s, w]$  ( $r$  as above) and as a result this point is in  $\mathcal{V}$ . Hence  $s\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^{m-1}$  and  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^m = \mathcal{V}\alpha^{m-1}$ , contradicting  $\mathcal{V}\alpha \neq \mathcal{V}$ .

**Case C.2.2.**  $w\tau^{-1} \in [s, w]$ .

Here  $\mathcal{V}\tau^{-1}$  is contained in  $\mathcal{V}$ .

The condition implies that  $w$  is in a local axis  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  of  $\tau$  (this case will be ruled out, we only establish the existence of a local axis of  $\tau$  in  $\mathcal{W}$  later). Beware that  $s$  may not be a limit point of  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . Put an order  $<$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  so  $c < d$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  if  $s < c < d$  – the order decreases as points get closer to  $s$ .

**Case C.2.2.1.**  $w\tau \in \mathcal{V}\alpha, w\tau \notin \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}$ , see Figure 17 (a).

Here  $\mathcal{V}\alpha\tau \subset \mathcal{V}\alpha$ .

The conditions imply in particular that  $\mathcal{V}\alpha \neq \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}$ . Here  $s\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{V}\alpha$ , so  $s\beta\alpha^m \in \mathcal{V}\alpha$ . Also  $s\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $w$  so  $s\beta = s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $w\tau^{-1}$ . It follows that  $s\beta$  is in  $\mathcal{V}$  and  $s\beta\alpha^m$  is in  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^m$ . Hence  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^m = \mathcal{V}\alpha$ .

On the other hand  $s\alpha\tau = s\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$ . Use  $s\alpha\beta = s\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$ . Here

$$s\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{V}\alpha \Rightarrow s\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{V} \Rightarrow s\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{V}.$$

Finally  $s\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^{m-1}$ . So  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^{m-1} = \mathcal{V}\alpha$  and  $\mathcal{V} = \mathcal{V}\alpha$ , again contradicting the assumption in this case.

**Case C.2.2.2.** Suppose  $w\tau$  is not in  $\mathcal{V}\alpha$  and  $w\tau$  is not in  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}$ .

Then  $w\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{R}$  another component of  $T - \{w\}$ . Then  $s\alpha\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{R}$ . Now

$s\beta\alpha^m = s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^m$ . But

$$\begin{aligned} w\tau \notin \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1} &\Rightarrow s\alpha^{-1} \text{ bridges to } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau \text{ in } w \\ &\Rightarrow s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \text{ bridges to } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau \text{ in } w\tau^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

and  $s\beta$  is in  $\mathcal{V}$ . Therefore  $s\beta\alpha^m \in \mathcal{V}\alpha^m = \mathcal{R}$ . Notice  $\mathcal{R}\alpha^{-1} \neq \mathcal{R}$  because  $\mathcal{R} = \mathcal{V}\alpha^m$  and  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1} \neq \mathcal{V}$ . Use

$$s\alpha\tau = s\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1} = s\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^{m-1} \text{ and } s\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{R}\alpha^{-1} \neq \mathcal{R}.$$

Hence  $s\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in a point  $\leq w$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  (it is in  $[s, w]$ ) and  $s\alpha\beta$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in a point  $\leq w\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . Hence

$$s\alpha\beta \in \mathcal{V} \Rightarrow s\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1} \in \mathcal{V}\alpha^{m-1} \Rightarrow \mathcal{V}\alpha^m = \mathcal{V}\alpha^{m-1},$$

contradiction. Notice that here it doesn't matter whether  $\mathcal{V}\alpha = \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}$  or not.

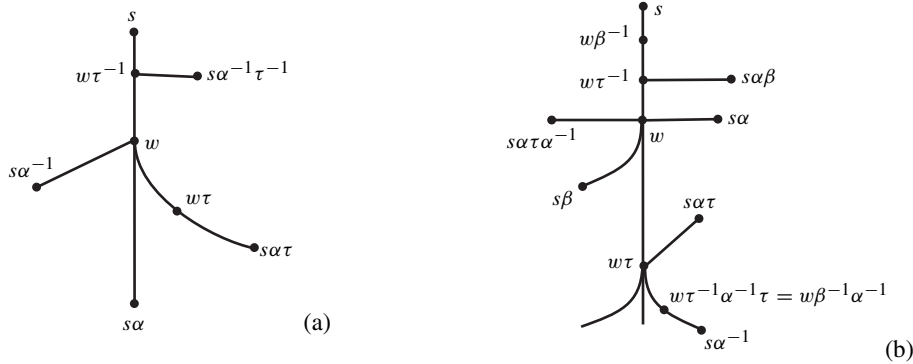


Figure 17. (a) Case C.2.2.1, (b) Case C.2.2.3.

**Case C.2.2.3.**  $w\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}$ , see Figure 17 (b).

This implies  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}\tau$  is a subset of  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}$ .

Use  $s\alpha\tau = s\beta\alpha^m = s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^m = s\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$ . Here

$$s\alpha \notin \mathcal{V} \Rightarrow s\alpha\tau \in T_w(w\tau) = \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1} \Rightarrow s\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-2} \neq \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1},$$

so it bridges to a point  $r$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  with  $r \leq w$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . Hence  $s\alpha\beta$  is in  $\mathcal{V}$  and  $s\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^{m-1}$ . Hence  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^{m-1} = \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}$  or  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^m = \mathcal{V}$ .

On the other hand  $s\alpha\tau = s\beta\alpha^m$  is in  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}$ , so

$$s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = s\beta \text{ is in } \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1-m} = \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}.$$

Then  $s\beta$  bridges to a point  $> w$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . But  $s\beta = s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$ , so  $s\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to a point  $> w\tau$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ , which implies  $w\tau \in (w, s\alpha^{-1})$ . It follows that  $w\tau\alpha \in (w, s)$  and  $w\beta^{-1} = w\tau\alpha\tau^{-1}$  is in  $(w\tau^{-1}, s)$  and so is in  $\mathcal{W}$  and in  $\mathcal{V}$ .

The following arguments use the strategy of case R.2:

Now  $w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma = w\beta^{-1}$  is in  $(s, w) \subset \mathcal{W}$  and therefore

$$w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} = w\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\tau \text{ is in } (s\alpha^{-1}, w) \subset \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}.$$

Since  $s\gamma = s$ , this implies that  $\mathcal{W}\gamma = \mathcal{W}$  and  $w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  is in a local axis for  $\gamma$  and hence so is  $w$ . Because  $\tau^p = \gamma^{-q}$  and the local axis for  $\gamma$  and  $\tau$  intersect in  $w$ , it follows that these two axis are equal. In particular  $(\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau)\gamma = \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and  $w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma = w\beta^{-1}$ ,  $w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  are in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ .

Since  $w\tau\alpha = w\beta^{-1}\tau$ , then  $w\tau\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . If  $w\tau\alpha \leq w\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  then  $w\beta^{-1} = w\tau\alpha\tau^{-1} \leq w\tau^{-2}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . Also  $w\tau, w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  are in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and  $w\tau < w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . Hence

$$w\tau\gamma < w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma = w\beta^{-1} \leq w\tau^{-2} \text{ in } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau \Rightarrow p > 3q,$$

contradiction to  $|p - 2q| = 1$ .

If  $w\tau\alpha > w\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  then  $w\tau\alpha\tau^{-1} = w\beta^{-1} \in (w\tau^{-2}, w\tau^{-1})$ . Here use

$$(w\tau^2)\gamma\beta\alpha^m = w\tau\alpha\tau \in T_w(w\tau) = \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1} \Rightarrow w\tau^2\gamma\beta \in \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1},$$

because  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^m = \mathcal{V}$ . Therefore  $w\tau^2\gamma\beta$  bridges to  $v$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  with  $v > w$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . Hence  $w\tau^2\gamma < w\beta^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and as  $w\beta^{-1} < w\tau^{-1}$  we also obtain  $p > 3q$ , contradiction.

This rules out the case C.2.2.3 and hence finishes the analysis of case C.2.2,  $w\tau^{-1} \in [s, w]$ . The next case is:

**Case C.2.3.**  $w\tau \in [s, w]$ .

This implies that  $\mathcal{V}\tau \subset \mathcal{V}$ . The case is similar to case C.2.2.

**Case C.2.3.1.**  $w\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}$ ,  $w\tau^{-1} \notin \mathcal{V}\alpha$ .

This implies that  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \subset \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}$ .

Here  $w\tau^{-1}\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{V}$ ,  $w\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{V}$  so  $w\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1} = w\beta\alpha^{m-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{V}$ . Also

$$w\tau\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1} \Rightarrow w\beta = w\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1} \Rightarrow w\beta\alpha^{m-1} \in \mathcal{V}\alpha^{m-2}$$

which must be equal to  $\mathcal{V}$ .

On the other hand  $s\alpha\tau = s\beta\alpha^m$ . Here  $s\alpha \in \mathcal{V}\alpha$  and bridges to  $w$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ , so  $s\alpha\tau$  bridges to  $w\tau$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and  $s\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{V}$ . Also

$$s\beta = s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1} \text{ and } s\beta\alpha^m \in \mathcal{V}\alpha^{m-1}.$$

It follows that  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^{m-1} = \mathcal{V}\alpha^{m-2}$ , contradiction to  $\mathcal{V} \neq \mathcal{V}\alpha$ .

**Case C.2.3.2.**  $w\tau^{-1} \notin \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}, w\tau^{-1} \notin \mathcal{V}\alpha$ .

Use  $s\alpha\tau = s\beta\alpha^m = s\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$ . In this case the point  $s\alpha$  bridges to  $w$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and  $s\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{V}$ . Also  $s\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $w$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and  $s\beta = s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  bridges  $w\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  so

$$s\beta \text{ is in } \mathcal{R} = T_w(w\tau^{-1}) \neq \mathcal{V}\alpha, \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1} \Rightarrow s\beta\alpha^m \in \mathcal{R}\alpha^m = \mathcal{V}.$$

So in particular  $\mathcal{R} \neq \mathcal{R}\alpha$ .

On the other hand  $s\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}$  and bridges to  $w$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  so  $s\alpha\beta = s\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  bridges to  $w\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and is in  $\mathcal{R}$ . Then  $s\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1} \in \mathcal{R}\alpha^{m-1} = \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}$ . This would imply  $\mathcal{V} = \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-1}$ , contradiction.

The final case in C.2.3 is:

**Case C.2.3.3.**  $w\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{V}\alpha$ .

Let  $[s\alpha, r]$  be the bridge from  $s\alpha$  to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  with  $r$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . Then  $r > w$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . Here we have to subdivide.

**Situation I.**  $r$  is in  $(w, w\tau^{-1})$ .

Then  $s\alpha\tau$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $r\tau \in (w, w\tau)$  and  $s\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{V}$ . Hence

$$s\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1} \notin \mathcal{V} \Rightarrow s\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = s\alpha\beta \in \mathcal{V}\alpha \Rightarrow s\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1} \in \mathcal{V}\alpha^m \Rightarrow \mathcal{V} = \mathcal{V}\alpha^m.$$

On the other hand  $s\beta\alpha^m = s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^m$ . Here  $s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{V}\alpha$  so  $s\beta\alpha^m$  is in  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^{m+1}$ , implying  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^m = \mathcal{V}\alpha^{m+1}$  again a contradiction.

**Situation II.**  $r = w\tau^{-1}$ .

Here  $s\alpha\tau$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $w$  hence  $s\alpha\tau \notin \mathcal{V}\alpha$  and  $s\alpha\tau \notin \mathcal{V}$ . So  $s\alpha\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{R}$ , another component of  $T - \{w\}$ . Also

$$s\alpha^{-1} \notin \mathcal{V} \Rightarrow s\beta = s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{V}\alpha \Rightarrow s\beta\alpha^m \in \mathcal{V}\alpha^{m+1} \Rightarrow \mathcal{R} = \mathcal{V}\alpha^{m+1}.$$

On the other hand  $s\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1} \in \mathcal{V}\alpha^{m+1}$ , so  $s\alpha\beta \in \mathcal{V}\alpha^2$ . Now  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^2 \neq \mathcal{V}\alpha$  so  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^2\tau$  is contained in  $\mathcal{V}$ . Hence  $s\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1} = s\alpha\beta\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{V}$ . This would imply  $s\alpha\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{V}\alpha$ , contradiction to the first conclusion in this case.

**Situation III.**  $w\tau^{-1} < r$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ .

This is a little more tricky. Here  $s\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{V}\alpha$ . Also

$$w\beta^{-1} = w\tau\alpha\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{V}\alpha \subset \mathcal{W}.$$

Now use  $w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} = w\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\tau$ . Here

$$\begin{aligned} w\tau^{-1} \in (w, s\alpha) &\Rightarrow w\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \in (w, s) \\ &\Rightarrow w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} = w\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\tau \in (s, w\tau) \subset \mathcal{W}. \end{aligned}$$

So  $w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  and  $w\beta^{-1}$  are both in  $\mathcal{W}$ , with the implication as in case C.2.2.3 that  $\mathcal{W}\gamma = \mathcal{W}$  and  $\gamma$  leaves  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  invariant. As  $w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  and  $w\beta^{-1} = w\tau\alpha\tau^{-1}$  are in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  then  $w\tau\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  as well.

The proof is now analogous to previous arguments. If

$$w < w\tau^{-1} < w\tau\alpha \Rightarrow w\tau^{-1} < w\tau^{-2} < w\tau\alpha\tau^{-1} = w\beta^{-1}.$$

But

$$w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma = w\beta^{-1} \text{ and } w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \in (s, w\tau)$$

implies as before that  $p > 3q$ , contradiction. Same arguments show that  $w\tau^{-1} = w\tau\alpha$  implies  $p \geq 3q$ .

On the other hand if  $w < w\tau\alpha < w\tau^{-1}$ , then  $w\tau^{-1} < w\tau\alpha\tau^{-1} = w\beta^{-1} < w\tau^{-2}$  all in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . Here  $s\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{V}\alpha$ . Now  $s\beta\alpha^m = s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha^m$ . Also

$$s\alpha^{-1} \notin \mathcal{V} \Rightarrow s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{V}\alpha \Rightarrow s\beta\alpha^m \in \mathcal{V}\alpha^{m+1} \Rightarrow \mathcal{V}\alpha = \mathcal{V}\alpha^{m+1} \text{ or } \mathcal{V} = \mathcal{V}\alpha^m.$$

Now use  $w\tau^2\gamma\beta\alpha^m = w\tau\alpha\tau$ . Here

$$w\tau < w\tau\alpha\tau < w \text{ in } \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau \Rightarrow w\tau\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{V}, w\tau^2\gamma\beta \in \mathcal{V}\alpha^{-m} = \mathcal{V}.$$

So  $w\tau^2\gamma < w\beta^{-1} < w\tau^{-1} < w$ , implying again  $p > 3q$ , contradiction.

This finishes the analysis of case C.2.3,  $w\tau \in [s, w]$  and so proves that the case  $\mathcal{V}\alpha \neq \mathcal{V}$  cannot occur. From now on in case C assume:

**Case C.3.**  $\mathcal{W}\tau = \mathcal{W}$  and  $\mathcal{V}\alpha = \mathcal{V}$ .

Since there is no other fixed point of  $\alpha$  in  $(s, w)$ , this immediately implies there is a local axis  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  of  $\alpha$  contained in  $\mathcal{V}$  with  $w$  as an ideal point of  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . We stress that at this point we do not yet have an axis for  $\tau$ , because there may be other fixed points of  $\tau$  in  $(s, w)$ .

**Lemma 7.1.**  $s\alpha, s\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{W}$ , so  $s\alpha, s\alpha^{-1}$  are not in  $[s, w)$ .

*Proof.* Suppose first that  $s\alpha$  is not in  $\mathcal{W}$ . Then

$$s\alpha^{-1} \in (s, w) \subset \mathcal{W} \Rightarrow s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \in \mathcal{W}\tau = \mathcal{W}.$$

So  $s\beta \in \mathcal{W}$  and bridges to  $[s, w]$  in a point  $r$  which is in  $(s, w]$ . Then  $s\beta\alpha^m$  bridges to  $[s, w]$  in  $r\alpha^m$  and  $s\beta\alpha^m$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ . Therefore  $s\alpha\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$  and  $s\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{W}\tau^{-1} = \mathcal{W}$ , contradiction.

On the other hand suppose that  $s\alpha^{-1} \notin \mathcal{W}$ . Then  $s\alpha \in (s, w)$ . Also  $s\beta = s\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \notin \mathcal{W}$ , so bridges to  $[s, w]$  in  $s$ . Then  $s\beta\alpha^m$  bridges to  $[s\alpha^m, x]$  in  $s\alpha^m$ . Since  $s\alpha^m \notin \mathcal{W}$  this implies  $s\beta\alpha^m \notin \mathcal{W}$ , therefore  $s\alpha\tau \notin \mathcal{W}$ . But then  $s\alpha$  is not in  $\mathcal{W}$ , contradiction. This finishes the proof.  $\square$

We conclude that  $s\alpha, s\alpha^{-1}$  are in  $\mathcal{W} \cap \mathcal{V}$ . Let  $s\alpha$  bridge to  $r$  in  $[s, w]$ , hence  $r \in (s, w)$  and  $s\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $[s, w]$  in a point  $t$  also in  $(s, w)$ .

Let  $z$  be the fixed point of  $\tau$  in  $[s, w]$  which is closest to  $w$ . Then  $z$  may be equal to  $s$ , but is not  $w$ . Let  $\mathcal{U} = T_z(w)$ . One important goal is to prove that  $\mathcal{U}\tau = \mathcal{U}$ .

**Lemma 7.2.** *Let  $\mathcal{U} = T_z(w)$ . Then  $\mathcal{U}\tau = \mathcal{U}$ . If  $z \neq s$  then  $z\gamma, w\gamma \notin \mathcal{W}$ , and  $z\alpha, z\alpha^{-1} \notin (z, w)$ .*

*Proof.* If  $z = s$  then  $\mathcal{U} = \mathcal{W}$  and the result follows from case C.1. For the rest of the proof of the lemma assume that  $s \neq z$ .

We first analyse the possibility that  $z\gamma \in \mathcal{W}$ . As  $\kappa$  fixes  $s$  then  $z\gamma^{-1} \in \mathcal{W}$  also. If  $z\gamma = z$ , then  $z\kappa = z$ , contradiction.

Suppose that  $z\gamma$  or  $z\gamma^{-1}$  is in  $[s, z]$ . Then as  $s\gamma = s$ , it follows that  $z$  is in a local axis for  $\gamma$  and  $z\gamma^q \neq z$ , contradiction to  $z$  fixed by  $\tau$ . Hence  $z\gamma, z\gamma^{-1} \notin [s, z]$ .

Let  $[z\gamma, r]$  be the bridge from  $z\gamma$  to  $[s, z]$ . Notice that  $r$  is in  $(s, z)$ , because  $z\gamma, z\gamma^{-1}$  are not in  $[s, w]$ . Then

$$r \in [s, z] \cap [s, z\gamma] \Rightarrow r\gamma^{-1} \in [s, z].$$

If  $r\gamma = r$ , then  $r\tau^p = r\gamma^{-q} = r$ . But  $([s, z])\tau = [s, z]$ , so this would imply  $r\tau = r$ . Together these imply  $r\kappa = r$ , contradiction to  $s$  the fixed point of  $\kappa$  in  $[s, w]$  which is closest to  $w$ .

We conclude that  $r\gamma \neq r$ . But as  $s\gamma = s$ , this implies that  $r$  is in a local axis  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\gamma$  of  $\gamma$ . Compute  $r\gamma^{nq}, n \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Assume without loss of generality that  $r\gamma^{nq}$  moves away from  $s$  as  $n \rightarrow +\infty$ . Then

$$r\gamma^{nq} = r\tau^{-np} \in [s, w], \text{ for all } n, \text{ and } r\gamma^{nq} \rightarrow c \in (s, z] \text{ as } n \rightarrow +\infty.$$

Hence  $c\gamma = c$  and also  $c\tau = c$ , contradiction.

This contradiction shows that  $z\gamma \in \mathcal{W}$  is impossible. Notice that if  $z\gamma$  is not in  $\mathcal{W}$ , then  $z\gamma$  separates  $\mathcal{W}\gamma$  from  $s$  and hence from  $\mathcal{W}$ . It follows that  $\mathcal{W}\gamma \cap \mathcal{W} = \emptyset$ , so  $w\gamma \notin \mathcal{W}$ . This proves one assertion of Lemma 7.2.

We now consider where  $z\alpha$  and  $z\alpha^{-1}$  are. The proof of case C.2 shows that they are both in  $\mathcal{V}$ . Remember that for the rest of the proof  $s \neq z$ .

**Situation I.** Suppose first that  $z\alpha \in (z, w)$ .

Use  $\alpha\tau = \tau\gamma\beta\alpha^m$ , applied to  $z$ . Here  $z\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$  so  $z\alpha\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{U}\tau$ . Suppose first that  $z\alpha^{-1}$  is not in  $\mathcal{U}\tau$ . Then  $z\alpha\tau$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in a point in  $[z, w]$  and hence  $a = z\alpha\tau\alpha^{-m}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in a point in  $[z\alpha^{-m}, w]$  and  $a$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ . Here

$$z\alpha\tau\alpha^{-m} = z\gamma\beta = z\gamma\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \Rightarrow z\gamma\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{U}\tau \neq \mathcal{U}.$$

Again  $z\gamma\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in a point in  $[z, w]$  and it follows that  $z\gamma$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ , hence  $z\gamma \in \mathcal{W}$  contradicting  $\mathcal{W}\gamma \cap \mathcal{W} = \emptyset$ .

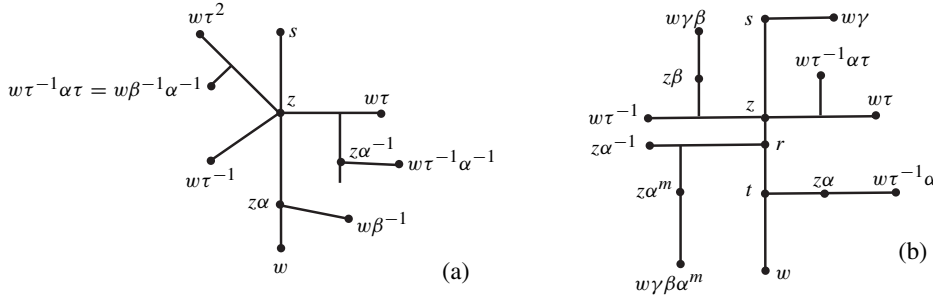


Figure 18. (a) Situation I, (b) Situation III.

The remaining possibility is  $\mathcal{U}\tau = T_z(z\alpha^{-1})$ , so in particular  $\mathcal{U}\tau \neq \mathcal{U}$ , see Figure 18(a). Consider  $w\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\tau$ . The point  $w\tau^{-1}$  is not in  $\mathcal{U}$ , hence it bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in a point not in  $(z, w]$ . Therefore  $w\tau\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in a point not in  $(z\alpha^{-1}, w]$ , so  $w\tau\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $T_z(z\alpha^{-1}) = \mathcal{U}\tau$ . Hence

$$w\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\tau = w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} \text{ is in } \mathcal{U}\tau^2 \neq \mathcal{U}\tau, T_z(s).$$

Notice that

$$(T_z(s))\tau = T_z(s), \text{ since } s\tau = s, \text{ so } T_z(s) \neq \mathcal{U}\tau^2.$$

In particular  $w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$  and also bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in a point which is in  $[z, w]$ . Then  $w\beta^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in a point which is in  $[z\alpha, w]$  so in particular  $w\beta^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U} \subset \mathcal{W}$ . But then  $w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  and  $w\alpha^{-1}$  are both in  $\mathcal{U}$ , contradicting  $\mathcal{W}\gamma \cap \mathcal{W} = \emptyset$ .

This finishes the analysis of possibility  $z\alpha \in (z, w)$ .

**Situation II.** Suppose  $z\alpha^{-1} \in (z, w)$ .

Consider first the case when  $z\alpha \in \mathcal{U}\tau^{-1}$ , that is  $T_z(z\alpha) = T_z(w\tau^{-1})$ . This is very similar to situation I, second part. Since  $z\alpha$  is not in  $\mathcal{U}$ , this in particular implies  $\mathcal{U}\tau \neq \mathcal{U}$ . Here  $w\tau \notin \mathcal{U}$ , hence it bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in a point which is not in  $(z, w]$ . It follows that  $w\tau\alpha$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in a point which is not in  $(z\alpha, w]$ . This implies that  $w\tau\alpha$  is in  $T_z(z\alpha) = T_z(w\tau^{-1})$ . Hence

$$w\beta^{-1} = w\tau\alpha\tau^{-1} \text{ is in } T_z(w\tau^{-2}) \neq T_z(s), T_z(w\tau^{-1}).$$

The first fact means that  $w\beta^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{W}$ . The second fact means that  $w\beta^{-1}$  is not in  $T_z(z\alpha)$ , hence  $w\beta^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in a point contained in  $[z, w]$ . Hence  $w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in a point contained in  $[z\alpha^{-1}, w]$  and is in  $\mathcal{W}$ . As  $w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\gamma = w\beta^{-1}$ , this would imply  $\mathcal{W}\gamma = \mathcal{W}$ , again contradiction. Hence this cannot occur.

Now we know  $z\alpha$  is not in  $T_z(w\tau^{-1})$ . The point  $z\beta = z\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  is in  $T_z(w\tau^{-1})$ , hence it bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in a point contained in  $[z, w]$ . It follows that  $z\beta\alpha^m$  bridges



to  $\mathcal{LA}_\alpha$  in a point contained in  $[z\alpha^m, w]$ . But

$$z\alpha^m \in \mathcal{U} \Rightarrow z\beta\alpha^m \in \mathcal{U} \Rightarrow z\gamma^{-1}\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{U} \text{ or } z\gamma^{-1}\alpha \in T_z(w\tau^{-1})$$

and bridges to  $\mathcal{LA}_\alpha$  in a point in  $[z, w]$ . It follows that  $z\gamma^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{LA}_\alpha$  in a point in  $[z\alpha^{-1}, w]$ , hence  $z\gamma^{-1} \in \mathcal{U} \subset \mathcal{W}$ , impossible.

We conclude that situation II cannot occur. This proves the last 2 assertions of the Lemma 7.2. It also implies that the following situation must occur:

**Situation III.**  $z\alpha \notin (z, w), z\alpha^{-1} \notin (z, w)$ , see Figure 18 (b).

What is left to prove of Lemma 7.2 is that  $\mathcal{U}\tau = \mathcal{U}$ . So suppose that  $\mathcal{U}\tau \neq \mathcal{U}$ .

Here  $z\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $[z, w]$  in a point  $r$  which is in  $(z, w)$ . Also  $z\alpha$  bridges to  $t$  in  $[z, w]$  with  $t$  also in  $(z, w)$ .

The point  $w\gamma$  is not in  $\mathcal{W}$ , so it is in  $T_z(s)$  and bridges to  $[w\tau^{-1}, z]$  in  $z$ . Hence  $w\gamma\beta$  bridges to  $[w\tau^{-1}, z\beta]$  in  $z\beta$ . But  $z\beta = z\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1}$  bridges to  $[z, w\tau^{-1}]$  in  $r\tau^{-1}$ . Then  $w\gamma\beta$  bridges to  $[z, w]$  in  $z$  (this uses  $\mathcal{U}\tau \neq \mathcal{U}$ !). Then

$$w\gamma\beta\alpha^m \text{ bridges to } [z, w] \text{ in a point in } (z, w) \text{ so } w\gamma\beta\alpha^m \in \mathcal{U}.$$

On the other hand  $w\tau^{-1}$  bridges to  $[z, w]$  in  $z$  so  $w\tau^{-1}\alpha$  bridges to  $[z, w]$  in a point in  $(z, w)$  and  $w\tau^{-1}\alpha$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ . Then  $w\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{U}\tau$ . Of course this implies  $\mathcal{U}\tau = \mathcal{U}$ , contrary to assumption.

So in any case we conclude that  $\mathcal{U}\tau = \mathcal{U}$ . This finishes the proof of Lemma 7.2. □

This lemma is very useful. Since there is no fixed point of  $\tau$  in  $(z, w)$  and  $T_z(w)\tau = T_z(w)$  it follows that there is a local axis  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$  of  $\tau$  contained in  $\mathcal{U} = T_z(w)$  with an ideal point  $z$ .

**Lemma 7.3.**  $w$  is not in  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$ .

*Proof.* Suppose not, that is,  $w \in \mathcal{LA}_\tau$ . Notice that  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$  is a local axis for  $\tau$  and  $w$  is a fixed point of  $\alpha$ .

*Claim.* At least one of the components of  $T - \{w\}$  containing  $w\tau, w\tau^{-1}$  is not invariant under  $\alpha$ .

We first prove the claim. Suppose the claim is not true. If  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$  is also a local axis for  $\kappa$ , that is  $(\mathcal{LA}_\tau)\kappa = \mathcal{LA}_\tau$  then we can apply Lemma 5.1 and prove the claim. Suppose then that  $\kappa$  does not leave  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$  invariant or equivalently  $(\mathcal{LA}_\tau)\gamma$  is not equal to  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$ . If  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$  were an axis for  $\tau$  (as opposed to a local axis), then  $\tau$  would act freely and so would  $\kappa$  and  $\kappa$  would leave  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$  invariant, contrary to assumption. It follows that  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$  is not properly embedded and has limit points in  $T$ . In the same way  $\kappa$  does not act freely and it has a fixed point  $r$ . Then  $r$  bridges to  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$  in a

point  $v$ . Here  $r\tau = r$  bridges to  $v\tau$  in  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$ , hence  $v\tau = v$  and  $v$  is a limit point of  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$ .

Let  $s$  be the point of  $[p, v]$  which is closest to  $v$  and fixed by  $\kappa$ . It might be that  $s = v$ . Let  $\mathcal{C} = T_s(w)$ , which contains  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$ . First we show that  $\mathcal{C}\gamma$  is not equal to  $\mathcal{C}$ . Suppose by way of contradiction that  $\mathcal{C}\gamma = \mathcal{C}$ . First consider the case that  $s = v$ . Then  $\mathcal{C} = T_v(w)$  and

$$\mathcal{C}\gamma = \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{C}\tau = \mathcal{C} \text{ implies } \mathcal{C}\kappa = \mathcal{C},$$

and consequently  $\kappa$  has a local axis in  $T_v(w)$ . As seen before this axis must be equal to  $\mathcal{LA}_\tau$ , which was dealt with before. Suppose then that  $s, v$  are distinct. Let  $t$  in  $[s, v]$  be the closest point to  $v$  which is fixed by  $\gamma$ . Then

$$t\tau^p = t\gamma^{-q} = t \text{ and } ([s, v])\tau = [s, v] \text{ imply } t\tau = t.$$

Therefore  $t\kappa = t$  and by the defining property of  $s$  then  $t = s$ . It follows that  $\gamma$  fixes no point in  $(s, v)$ . Then if  $\mathcal{C}\gamma = \mathcal{C}$  it follows that  $\gamma$  has a local axis  $\mathcal{LA}_\gamma$  in  $\mathcal{C}$  with ideal point  $s$ . But again  $([s, v])\gamma^q = [s, v]$  and  $(s, v)$  intersecting  $\mathcal{LA}_\gamma$  implies the existence of a fixed point of  $\gamma$  in  $(s, v)$ , contradiction.

We conclude that  $\mathcal{C}\gamma$  is distinct from  $\mathcal{C}$  and consequently it is disjoint from  $\mathcal{C}$  as we wished to prove. We continue the proof of the claim. Let

$$\mathcal{U}_1 = T_w(w\tau), \quad \mathcal{U}_2 = T_w(w\tau^{-1}).$$

The assumption of the claim is that  $\mathcal{U}_i\alpha = \mathcal{U}_i$  for  $i = 1, 2$ . There are two options:

**Option 1:  $v$  is a forward limit point.** Suppose  $v$  as above is the limit of  $w\tau^n$  with  $n \rightarrow +\infty$ .

In this case  $v$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_1$ . Notice that  $\mathcal{U}_2 \subset \mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{U}_1$  is not contained in  $\mathcal{C}$ , but since  $\mathcal{C}\gamma \cap \mathcal{C}$  is empty it follows that  $\mathcal{C}\gamma$  is contained in  $\mathcal{U}_1$ . Here we use

$$(w\tau^{-1})\gamma^{-1}\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = w\tau^{-2}\gamma^{-1}\alpha\tau = w\tau^{-1}\beta\alpha^m.$$

Now  $\beta$  leaves  $w\tau^{-1}$  invariant and  $w\tau^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2$ . Hence  $w\tau^{-1}\beta\alpha^m$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2\alpha^m = \mathcal{U}_2$ . On the other hand  $w\tau^{-2}$  is in  $\mathcal{C}$  so  $w\tau^{-2}\gamma^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{C}\gamma \subset \mathcal{U}_1$ . Therefore

$$w\tau^{-2}\gamma^{-1}\alpha \text{ is in } \mathcal{U}_1 \text{ and } w\tau^{-2}\gamma^{-1}\alpha\tau \text{ is in } \mathcal{U}_1\tau \subset \mathcal{U}_1.$$

This is a contradiction and cannot happen.

**Option 2:  $v$  is a backward limit point.** Suppose that  $v$  as above is the limit of  $w\tau^n$  with  $n \rightarrow -\infty$ .

In this case  $v$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_2$ . Notice that  $\mathcal{U}_1 \subset \mathcal{C}$  and  $\mathcal{U}_2$  is not contained in  $\mathcal{C}$  but  $\mathcal{C}\gamma$  is contained in  $\mathcal{U}_2$ . We use  $w\alpha\tau = w\tau\gamma\beta\alpha^m$ . First  $w\alpha\tau$  is  $w\tau$  which is in  $\mathcal{U}_1$ . We

now consider the right side. Here  $w\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_1 \subset \mathcal{C}$  so  $w\tau\gamma$  is in  $\mathcal{C}\gamma \subset \mathcal{U}_2\tau^{-1}$ . The set  $\mathcal{U}_2\tau^{-1}$  is invariant under  $\beta$ . Therefore

$$w\tau\gamma\beta \text{ is in } \mathcal{U}_2\tau^{-1} \subset \mathcal{U}_2 \text{ and } w\tau\gamma\beta\alpha^m \text{ is in } \mathcal{U}_2\alpha^m \subset \mathcal{U}_2.$$

This contradicts that  $w\alpha\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{U}_1$ .

These two options show at least one of  $\mathcal{U}_1\alpha \neq \mathcal{U}_1$  or  $\mathcal{U}_2\alpha \neq \mathcal{U}_2$  has to hold.

This proves the claim. We now continue the proof of Lemma 7.3.

**Situation I.**  $w\tau^{-1} \in (z, w)$ .

Here  $\mathcal{V} = T_w(z) = T_w(w\tau^{-1})$  is invariant under  $\alpha$ . By the claim above the set  $\mathcal{R} = T_w(w\tau)$  is not invariant under  $\alpha$ . Notice that  $\mathcal{R}\alpha$  is not equal to  $\mathcal{V}$  either.

Use  $w\alpha\tau = w\tau = w\tau\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$ . Here

$$\begin{aligned} w\tau \in \mathcal{R} &\Rightarrow w\tau\alpha \in \mathcal{R}\alpha \neq \mathcal{V} \Rightarrow w\tau\alpha\tau \in \mathcal{R}\tau \subset \mathcal{R} \\ &\Rightarrow c = w\tau\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1} \in \mathcal{R}\alpha^{-1} \neq \mathcal{R}. \end{aligned}$$

So  $c$  bridges to  $w$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and then  $w\tau\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = w\tau\alpha\beta$  bridges to  $w\tau^{-1}$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and is then in  $\mathcal{V}$ . Finally  $w\tau\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{V}\alpha^{m-1} = \mathcal{V}$ . This is not  $\mathcal{R}$ , contradiction.

**Situation II.**  $w\tau \in (z, w)$ .

Here  $\mathcal{V} = T_w(w\tau) = T_w(z)$  is invariant under  $\alpha$ . In this case let  $\mathcal{R} = T_w(w\tau^{-1})$ , which is not invariant under  $\alpha$ . Use  $w\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = w\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$ . Then  $w\tau^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{R}$ , so  $w\tau^{-1}\alpha$  is not in  $\mathcal{R}$  or  $\mathcal{V}$  and bridges to  $w$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . Then  $w\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau$  bridges to  $w\tau$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and is in  $\mathcal{V}$ . It follows that

$$w\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau\alpha^{1-m} = w\alpha\beta = w\beta = w\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \text{ is in } \mathcal{V}.$$

Hence  $w\tau\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{V}\tau$ . This implies

$$w\tau\alpha^{-1} < w\tau < w \Rightarrow w\tau < w\tau\alpha < w \Rightarrow w < w\tau\alpha\tau^{-1} = w\beta^{-1} < w\tau^{-1}.$$

In particular  $w\beta^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{R}$  and  $w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{R}\alpha^{-1}$  which is not equal to  $\mathcal{V}$ . Also  $w\beta^{-1}\alpha^{-1} = w\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\tau$ . Here  $w\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $\mathcal{R}\alpha^{-1}$  and bridges to  $w$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and so  $w\tau^{-1}\alpha^{-1}\tau$  bridges to  $w\tau$  in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and so is in  $\mathcal{V}$ . As  $\mathcal{V}$  is not equal to  $\mathcal{R}\alpha^{-1}$ , this is a contradiction.

We conclude that situation II cannot happen either. This finishes the proof of the lemma. □

Now we know that  $w$  is not in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ .

**Lemma 7.4.**  $z$  is not in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ .

*Proof.* Suppose not, that is,  $z \in \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . This implies that either  $z\alpha$  or  $z\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $(z, w)$ . Then Lemma 7.2 implies that  $s = z$ .

Suppose first that  $z\alpha \in (z, w)$ . So  $z\alpha^{-1} \notin T_z(w) = \mathcal{U}$ . Use  $z\alpha\tau = z\beta\alpha^m$ . As  $z\alpha \in \mathcal{U}$ , then  $z\alpha\tau$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$  also. Then

$$z\alpha^{-1} \notin \mathcal{U} \Rightarrow z\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} \notin \mathcal{U} \Rightarrow z\beta \text{ bridges to } [z, w] \text{ in } z$$

and  $z\beta\alpha^m$  bridges to  $[z\alpha^m, w] \supset [z, w]$  in  $z\alpha^m$ . It follows that  $z\beta\alpha^m$  is not in  $\mathcal{U}$ , contradiction.

Suppose now that  $z\alpha^{-1}$  is in  $[z, w]$ . Then  $z\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = z\beta$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$  and bridges to  $[z, w]$  in a point  $t$  which is not  $z$ . Then  $z\beta\alpha^m$  bridges to  $[z, w]$  in  $t\alpha^m$  and  $z\beta\alpha^m$  is in  $\mathcal{U}$ . On the other hand  $z\alpha$  is not in  $\mathcal{U}$  and so  $z\alpha\tau$  is not in  $\mathcal{U}$  either. This is a contradiction.

This finishes the proof of the lemma.  $\square$

**Summary in case C.3.** So far we have proved: suppose that  $w\alpha = w$ ,  $s\kappa = s$ , no fixed points of  $\kappa$  or  $\alpha$  in  $(s, w)$ . Let  $z \in [s, w)$ , the closest to  $w$  with  $z\tau = z$ . Then

$$(T_z(w))\tau = T_z(w), \quad (T_w(z))\alpha = T_w(z).$$

If  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau, \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  are the corresponding local axes of  $\tau$  and  $\alpha$  then  $z \notin \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha, w \notin \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ .

**Case C.3.0.** Suppose that  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \cap \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  has at most one point.

This is simple. Let  $[c, d]$  be the bridge from  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ , where  $c = d$  if the intersection is one point. First notice that  $c$  is a point in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and not a limit point. The reason is: if  $c$  is equal to  $z$  then  $z$  is a limit point of  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ , hence it is fixed by  $\alpha$  contradiction to no global fixed point. Suppose that  $c$  were another limit point of  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . As  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau \cap \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  is at most one point, this would imply that  $c$  separates  $w$  from  $z$  and contradicts the fact that  $z$  is the closest fixed point of  $\tau$  to  $w$ . This shows that  $c$  is an actual point of  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  and similarly  $d$  is actual point of  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ .

We do the proof for  $c \neq d$ , the other is very similar. Use  $z\tau^{-1}\alpha\tau = z\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$ . The right side is  $z\alpha\tau$ . Here  $z\alpha$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $d\alpha$ , hence bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $c$ . So  $z\alpha\tau$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $c\tau$ .

Hence  $z\alpha\tau$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $d$  so  $z\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $d\alpha^{-1}$  and to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $c$ . So  $z\alpha\tau\alpha^{-1}\tau^{-1} = z\alpha\beta$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $c\tau^{-1}$  hence to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $d$ . Finally  $z\alpha\beta\alpha^{m-1}$  bridges to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$  in  $d\alpha^{m-1}$  hence to  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  in  $c$ . Since  $c \neq c\tau$  this is a contradiction.

**Case C.3.1.** Now assume  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \cap \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  has more than one point. We will use the analysis done in case B.

If  $\mathcal{U}\gamma$  is not equal  $\mathcal{U}$  then we use the proof of case B.1.3 – which was also done for the case of local axis of  $\alpha$ . This disallows this case.

The remaining case is that  $\mathcal{U}\gamma$  is equal to  $\mathcal{U}$ . As explained in case B.1.4 this implies  $\gamma$  leaves  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  invariant. Here we consider the intersection  $\mathcal{B} = \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha \cap \mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . First notice that  $z$  is not in  $\mathcal{B}$  as  $z$  is not in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Also it was shown in case C.3.0 that  $z$  is not a limit point of  $\mathcal{B}$ . If  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  is not properly embedded on the other side let  $v$  be the other ideal point of  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ . Then

$$v\tau = v, \quad (T_w(v))\alpha = T_w(v), \quad (T_v(w))\tau = T_v(w).$$

Also  $(w, v)$  has no fixed points of  $\tau$ . Suppose that  $v$  is in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . Then  $(w, v)$  also has no fixed points of  $\alpha$ . But then  $v$  has the same properties as  $z$  and this case is ruled out by Lemma 7.4. It follows that  $v$  is not in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\alpha$ . So if  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$  has another ideal point  $v$ , then  $\mathcal{B}$  is  $[r, t]$  with  $t$  an actual point in  $\mathcal{L}\mathcal{A}_\tau$ .

Now we can apply the analysis of case B.1.4 which was also done for  $\alpha$  with a local axis. The analysis rules out this situation.

This shows that case C.3.1 cannot happen either.

This finishes the proof of the main theorem.

## 8. Remarks

**Recent activities.** There has been a flurry of activity in this area recently. We describe the results in more detail here and how they relate to the results in this article.

Calegari and Dunfield [Ca-Du] approached the existence problem for foliations, laminations and pseudo-Anosov flows from a different point of view. Following ideas and results of Thurston [Th5], [Th6] concerning the universal circle for foliations they showed that a wide class of essential laminations also possess a universal circle. One consequence is that tight essential laminations with torus guts (see [Ca-Du] for detailed definitions) have universal circles. Tight means the lifted lamination to the universal cover has Hausdorff leaf space. Hence the fundamental groups act on the circle. Under certain conditions related to orderability of a finite index subgroup, then the action lifts to a non trivial action in  $\mathbb{R}$  and they obtain nonexistence results for these types of laminations. For example they can show that the Weeks manifold does not have Reebless foliations, pseudo-Anosov flows or general tight essential laminations. The results on manifolds (eg the Weeks manifold) are computer assisted and so far there are computer capability restrictions to extending them to other manifolds. In addition these results use heavily the tight hypothesis, except for pseudo-Anosov flows.

A more recent article is that of Jinha Jun [Ju] who used the techniques of Roberts, Shareshian and Stein to analyse Dehn surgery on the  $(-2, 3, 7)$  pretzel knot in  $\mathbb{S}^3$ . He proved that there are infinitely many hyperbolic Dehn surgeries on this knot, which yield manifolds without Reebless foliations.

Another more recent result (October 2003) is from Kronheimer, Mrowka, Ozsvath and Szabo [KMOS]. This result is part of a very wide program to use techniques of analysis, symplectic and contact geometry to analyse 3 and 4-manifolds. Results of Eliashberg and Thurston [El-Th] allow one to perturb a Reebless foliation to a tight contact structure. Using this the above authors show that infinitely many hyperbolic manifolds do not have Reebless foliations [KMOS]. In particular there are infinitely many Dehn surgeries on the  $(-2, 3, 7)$  pretzel knot which satisfy this. The techniques are extremely complicated and it is yet unclear whether they can be extended to study essential laminations.

The tools and arguments in this article are more closely associated to those in [RSS], in that both look at group actions on simply connected 1-dimensional spaces. However, as we explained before there are 2 critical differences: the lack of transverse orientability for general essential laminations and the lack of a useful group invariant pseudo-metric in the leaf space, both of which were extremely useful in [RSS].

**Open questions.** There are a lot of interesting questions still open. First we discuss some internal questions about the proofs in this article. The proof of the  $\mathbb{R}$ -covered case uses  $p > 3q$  for  $\alpha$  orientation reversing. It would be useful to get a more general proof – for instance showing that  $p$  must be equal to 4 or that  $p$  has to be even. We obtained some preliminary results, but not conclusive. The same argument and condition  $p > 3q$  are then used in various places of the article so it would be very good to discover a more general proof.

Also the best possible result for the manifolds  $M_{p/q}$  described in this article would be the following: If  $p \geq q$ ,  $p$  odd,  $m \leq -4$  then the only possible essential laminations are those coming from either stable or unstable lamination in the original manifold  $M$  – these remain essential whenever  $|p - 2q| \geq 2$ . One way to interpret such a goal is a rigidity result– all laminations in this manifold have to be of this type. Notice that Brittenham’s results for Seifert fibered spaces [Br1] are of this form. Also Hatcher and Thurston’s results for surgery on 2-bridge links [Ha-Th] are along these lines.

Now on for more general goals: How far can the methods of this article be generalized? Can they be used whenever  $M$  is a punctured torus bundle over  $S^1$  with Anosov monodromy and degeneracy locus  $(1, 2)$ ? Probably a mixture of topological methods and group action methods needs to be used. How about surface bundles, where the surface has higher genus? What about other degeneracy locus as discovered by Gabai–Kazez [Ga-Ka1]?

Since essential laminations do not exist in every closed hyperbolic 3-manifold, one looks for useful generalizations. One possible idea was introduced by Gabai in [Ga5]: a lamination  $\lambda$  in  $M$ , compact, orientable, irreducible is *loose* if  $\lambda$  satisfies:

- 0)  $\lambda$  has no sphere leaves, and

1) for any leaf  $L$  of  $\lambda$ , the homomorphism  $\pi_1(L) \rightarrow \pi_1(M)$  induced by inclusion is injective, and for any closed complementary region  $V$ , the homomorphism  $\pi_1(V) \rightarrow \pi_1(M)$  induced by inclusion is injective.

Gabai [Ga5] conjectured that under these conditions with  $M$  closed, then  $\tilde{\lambda}$  is a product lamination and  $\tilde{M}$  is homeomorphic to  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . One test case is the class of manifolds  $M_{p/q}$  studied in this article. When  $|p - 2q| = 1$  the lamination coming from the stable lamination has monogons. The leaves are either planes or have  $\mathbb{Z}$  fundamental group. The complementary region is a solid torus. Then in order to check for the looseness conditions one only needs to understand if leaves inject in the fundamental group level.

Another direction involves general group actions on trees. When does a group act non trivially on a tree? Perhaps there are theoretical characterizations of when such an action exists. Here we are in some sense dealing with one dimensional dynamics, because a tree is a one dimensional object.

## References

- [Ag-Li] I. Agol and T. Li, An algorithm to detect laminar 3-manifolds. *Geom. Topol.* **7** (2003), 287–309. [Zbl 1037.57008](#) [MR 1988287](#)
- [Bk1] M. Baker, Covers of Dehn fillings on once punctured bundles. *Proc. Amer. Math. Soc.* **105** (1989), 747–754. [Zbl 0682.57006](#) [MR 0964452](#)
- [Bk2] M. Baker, Covers of Dehn fillings on once punctured bundles, II. *Proc. Amer. Math. Soc.* **110** (1990), 1099–1108. [Zbl 0731.57002](#) [MR 1027087](#)
- [Ba1] T. Barbot, Flots d'Anosov sur les variétés graphées au sens de Waldhausen. *Ann. Inst. Fourier Grenoble* **46** (1996), 1451–1517. [Zbl 0861.58028](#) [MR 1027087](#)
- [Ba2] T. Barbot, Actions de groupes sur les 1-variétés non séparées et feuilletages de codimension un. *Ann. Fac. Sci. Toulouse Math.* **7** (1998), 559–597. [Zbl 0932.57027](#) [MR 1693597](#)
- [BNS] R. Bieri, W. Neumann and R. Strebel, A geometric invariant of discrete groups. *Invent. Math.* **90** (1987), 451–477. [Zbl 0642.57002](#) [MR 0914846](#)
- [Bl-Ca] S. Bleiler and A. Casson, *Automorphisms of surfaces after Nielsen and Thurston*. London Math. Soc. Stud. Texts 9, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge 1988. [Zbl 0649.57008](#) [MR 0964685](#)
- [Br1] M. Brittenham, Essential laminations in Seifert fibered spaces. *Topology* **32** (1993), 61–85. [Zbl 0791.57013](#) [MR 1204407](#)
- [Br2] M. Brittenham, Essential laminations and deformations of homotopy equivalences: from essential pullback to homeomorphism. *Topology Appl.* **60** (1994), 249–265. [Zbl 0848.57003](#) [MR 1308972](#)
- [Br3] M. Brittenham, Persistently laminar tangles. *J. Knot Theory Ramifications* **8** (1999), 415–428. [Zbl 0941.57013](#) [MR 1697380](#)

- [Br4] M. Brittenham, Persistent laminations from Seifert surfaces. *J. Knot Theory Ramifications* **10** (2001), 1155–1168. [Zbl 1001.57016](#) [MR 1871223](#)
- [Bu-Zi] G. Burde and H. Zieschang, *Knots*. Second edition, de Gruyter Stud. Math. 5, Walter de Gruyter, Berlin 2003. [Zbl 0568.57001](#) [MR 0808776](#)
- [Ca-Du] D. Calegari and N. Dunfield, Laminations and groups of homeomorphisms of the circle. *Invent. Math.* **152** (2003), 149–204. [Zbl 1025.57018](#) [MR 1965363](#)
- [CJR] M. Culler, W. Jaco and H. Rubinstein, Incompressible surfaces in once punctured torus bundles. *Proc. London Math. Soc.* **45** (1982), 385–419. [Zbl 0515.57002](#) [MR 0675414](#)
- [Cu-Vo] M. Culler and K. Vogtman, A group theoretic criterion for property FA. *Proc. Amer. Math. Soc.* **124** (1996), 677–683. [Zbl 0865.20024](#) [MR 1307506](#)
- [De-Ro] C. Delman and R. Roberts, Alternating knots satisfy strong property P. *Comment. Math. Helv.* **74** (1999), 376–397. [Zbl 0949.57002](#) [MR 1710698](#)
- [El-Th] Y. Eliashberg and W. Thurston, *Confoliations*. Univ. Lecture Ser. 13, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 1998. [Zbl 0893.53001](#) [MR 1483314](#)
- [Fe] S. Fenley, Pseudo-Anosov flows and incompressible tori. *Geom. Dedicata* **99** (2003), 61–102. [Zbl 1047.37017](#) [MR 1998929](#)
- [Fl-Ha] W. Floyd and A. Hatcher, Incompressible surfaces in punctured torus bundles. *Topology Appl.* **13** (1982), 263–282. [Zbl 0493.57004](#) [MR 0651509](#)
- [Ga1] D. Gabai, Foliations and the topology of 3-manifolds. *J. Differential Geom.* **18** (1983), 445–503. [Zbl 0533.57013](#) [MR 723813](#)
- [Ga2] D. Gabai, Foliations and the topology of 3-manifolds II. *J. Differential Geom.* **26** (1987), 461–478. [Zbl 0627.57012](#) [MR 0910017](#)
- [Ga3] D. Gabai, Foliations and the topology of 3-manifolds III. *J. Differential Geom.* **26** (1987), 479–536. [Zbl 0639.57008](#) [MR 0910017](#)
- [Ga4] D. Gabai, 8 problems in foliations and laminations. In *Geometric Topology* (W. Kazez, ed.), AMS/IP Stud. Adv. Math. 2.2, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 1987, 1–33. [Zbl 0888.57025](#) [MR 1470750](#)
- [Ga5] D. Gabai, 3 lectures on foliations and laminations on 3-manifolds. In *Laminations and foliations in dynamics, geometry and topology* (Stony Brook, NY 1998), *Contemp. Math.* 269, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 2001, 87–109. [Zbl 0981.57008](#) [MR 1810537](#)
- [Ga-Ka1] D. Gabai and W. Kazez, Pseudo-Anosov maps and surgery on fibred 2-bridge knots. *Topology Appl.* **37** (1990), 93–100. [Zbl 0714.57004](#) [MR 1075377](#)
- [Ga-Ka2] D. Gabai and W. Kazez, Order trees and laminations of the plane. *Math. Res. Lett.* **4** (1997), 603–616. [Zbl 0887.57031](#) [MR 1470429](#)
- [Ga-Ka3] D. Gabai and W. Kazez, Homotopy, isotopy and genuine laminations of 3-manifolds. In *Geometric Topology* (Athens, GA 1993), AMS/IP Stud. Adv. Math. 2.1, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 1997, 123–138. [Zbl 0893.57012](#) [MR 1470725](#)
- [Ga-Ka4] D. Gabai and W. Kazez, Group negative curvature for 3-manifolds with genuine laminations. *Geom. Topol.* **2** (1998), 65–77. [Zbl 0905.57011](#) [MR 1619168](#)
- [Ga-Oe] D. Gabai and U. Oertel, Essential laminations and 3-manifolds. *Ann. of Math.* **130** (1989), 41–73. [Zbl 0685.57007](#) [MR 1005607](#)



- [Gh-Ha] E. Ghys and P. De la Harpe (eds.), *Sur les groupes hyperboliques d'après Mikhael Gromov*. Progr. Math. 83, Birkhäuser, Boston, MA, 1990. [Zbl 0731.20025](#) [MR 1086648](#)
- [Gr] M. Gromov, Hyperbolic groups. In *Essays in Group theory*, Math. Sci. Res. Inst. Publ. 8, Springer-Verlag, New York 1987, 75–263. [Zbl 0634.20015](#) [MR 0919829](#)
- [Hak1] W. Haken, Theorie der Normalflächen. *Acta Math.* **105** (1961), 245–375. [Zbl 0100.19402](#) [MR 0141106](#)
- [Hak2] W. Haken, Some results on surfaces in 3-manifolds. In *Studies in modern topology*, Math. Assoc. Amer./Prentice Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1968, 39–98. [Zbl 0194.24902](#) [MR 0224071](#)
- [Hat1] A. Hatcher, On the boundary curves of incompressible surfaces. *Pacific J. Math.* **99** (1982), 373–377. [Zbl 0502.57005](#) [MR 0658066](#)
- [Hat2] A. Hatcher, Some examples of essential laminations in 3-manifolds. *Ann. Inst. Fourier Grenoble* **42** (1992), 313–325. [Zbl 0759.57006](#) [MR 1162564](#)
- [Ha-Oe] A. Hatcher and U. Oertel, Boundary slopes for Montesinos knots. *Topology* **28** (1989), 453–480. [Zbl 0686.57006](#) [MR 1030987](#)
- [Ha-Th] A. Hatcher and W. Thurston, Incompressible surfaces in 2-bridge knot complements. *Invent. Math.* **79** (1985), 225–246. [Zbl 0602.57002](#) [MR 0778125](#)
- [He] J. Hempel, *3-manifolds*. Ann. of Math. Studies 86, Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ, 1976. [Zbl 0345.57001](#) [MR 0415619](#)
- [Ja-Oe] W. Jaco and U. Oertel, An algorithm to decide if a 3-manifold is a Haken manifold. *Topology* **23** (1984), 195–209. [Zbl 0545.57003](#) [MR 0744850](#)
- [Jo] T. Jorgenson, Compact 3-manifolds of constant negative curvature. *Ann. of Math.* **106** (1977), 61–72. [Zbl](#) [MR](#)
- [Ju] J. Jun,  $(-2, 3, 7)$ -pretzel knot and Reebless foliations. *Topology Appl.* **145** (2004), 209–232. [Zbl 02136841](#) [MR 2100874](#)
- [KMOS] P. Kronheimer, T. Mrowka, P. Ozsvath and Z. Szabo, Monopoles and lens space surgeries. *Ann. of Math.* **165** (2007).
- [Mo-Sh1] J. Morgan and P. Shalen, Valuations, trees and degenerations of hyperbolic structures, I. *Ann. of Math.* **120** (1984), 401–476. [Zbl 0583.57005](#) [MR 0769158](#)
- [Mo-Sh2] J. Morgan and P. Shalen, Degenerations of hyperbolic structures, II. Measured laminations in 3-manifolds. *Ann. of Math.* **127** (1988), 403–456. [Zbl 0656.57003](#) [MR 0932305](#)
- [Mo-Sh3] J. Morgan and P. Shalen, Degenerations of hyperbolic structures, III. Actions of 3-manifold groups on trees and Thurston's compactness theorem. *Ann. of Math.* **127** (1988), 457–519. [Zbl 0661.57004](#) [MR 0942518](#)
- [Mo1] L. Mosher, Dynamical systems and the homology norm of a 3-manifold I. Efficient intersection of surfaces and flows. *Duke Math. J.* **65** (1992), 449–500. [Zbl 0754.58030](#) [MR 1154179](#)
- [Mo2] L. Mosher, Laminations and flows transverse to finite depth foliations, Part I: Branched surfaces and dynamics. <http://newark.rutgers.edu:80/mosher/> Part II in preparation.

- [Na] R. Naimi, Foliations transverse to fibers of Seifert manifolds. *Comment. Math. Helv.* **69** (1994), 155–162. [Zbl 0797.55009](#) [MR 1259611](#)
- [No] S. P. Novikov, Topology of foliations. *Trans. Moscow Math. Soc.* **14** (1963), 268–305. [Zbl 0247.57006](#) [MR](#)
- [Oe] U. Oertel, Closed incompressible surfaces in complements of star links. *Pacific J. Math.* **111** (1984), 209–230. [Zbl 0549.57004](#) [MR 0732067](#)
- [Pe1] G. Perelman, The entropy formula for the Ricci flow and its geometric applications. Preprint, 2002; [arXiv:math.DG/0211159](#).
- [Pe2] G. Perelman, Ricci flow with surgery on three manifolds. Preprint, 2003; [arXiv:math.DG/0303109](#).
- [Re] G. Reeb, Sur certaines propriétés topologiques des variétés feuilletées. *Actual. Sci. Ind.* 1183, Hermann, Paris 1952, 5–89, 155–156. [Zbl 0049.12602](#) [MR 0055692](#)
- [Ro1] R. Roberts, Constructing taut foliations. *Comment. Math. Helv.* **70** (1995), 516–545. [Zbl 0855.57009](#) [MR 1360603](#)
- [Ro2] R. Roberts, Taut foliations in punctured surfaces bundles, I. *Proc. London Math. Soc.* (3) **82** (2001), 747–768. [Zbl 1034.57017](#) [MR 1816696](#)
- [Ro3] R. Roberts, Taut foliations in punctured surface bundles, II. *Proc. London Math. Soc.* (3) **83** (2001), 443–471. [Zbl 1034.57018](#) [MR 1839461](#)
- [Ro-St1] R. Roberts and M. Stein, Exceptional Seifert group actions on  $\mathbb{R}$ . *J. Knot Theory Ramifications* **8** (1999), 241–247. [Zbl 0936.57014](#) [MR 1687537](#)
- [Ro-St2] R. Roberts and M. Stein, Group actions on order trees. *Topology Appl.* **115** (2001), 175–201. [Zbl 0985.57007](#) [MR 1847462](#)
- [RSS] R. Roberts, J. Shareshian and M. Stein, Infinitely many hyperbolic 3-manifolds which contains no Reebless foliation. *J. Amer. Math. Soc.* **16** (2003), 639–679. [Zbl 1012.57022](#) [MR 1969207](#)
- [Rol] D. Rolfsen, *Knots and links*. Publish or Perish, Berkeley, CA, 1976. [Zbl 0339.55004](#) [MR 0515288](#)
- [Sc] P. Scott, The geometries of 3-manifolds. *Bull. London Math. Soc.* **15** (1983), 401–487. [Zbl 0561.57001](#) [MR 0705527](#)
- [Se] J. P. Serre, *Trees*. Springer-Verlag, Berlin 1980. [Zbl 0548.20018](#) [MR 0607504](#)
- [Th1] W. Thurston, *The geometry and topology of 3-manifolds*. Princeton University Lecture Notes, Princeton, NJ, 1982.
- [Th2] W. Thurston, Three dimensional manifolds, Kleinian groups and hyperbolic geometry. *Bull. Amer. Math. Soc.* **6** (1982), 357–381. [Zbl 0496.57005](#) [MR 0648524](#)
- [Th3] W. Thurston, Hyperbolic structures on 3-manifolds II: Surface groups and 3-manifolds that fiber over the circle. Preprint.
- [Th4] W. Thurston, On the geometry and dynamics of diffeomorphisms of surfaces. *Bull. Amer. Math. Soc.* **19** (1988), 417–431. [Zbl 0674.57008](#) [MR 0956596](#)
- [Th5] W. Thurston, 3-manifolds, foliations and circles II: Transverse asymptotic geometry of foliations. Preprint.

- [Th6] W. Thurston, *The universal circle for foliations and transverse laminations*. Lectures in M.S.R.I., Berkeley, CA, 1997.
- [Wa] K. Waldhausen, On irreducible 3-manifolds which are sufficiently large. *Ann. of Math.* **87** (1968), 56–88. [Zbl 0157.30603](#) [MR 0224099](#)

Received April 27, 2004; revised November 30, 2005

Sérgio R. Fenley, Florida State University, Tallahassee, FL 32306-4510, U.S.A.

E-mail: [fenley@math.fsu.edu](mailto:fenley@math.fsu.edu)